ORIGINAL JOURNALS
OF THE
LEWIS AND CLARK EXPEDITION
1804-1806
WITH FACSIMILES, MAPS, PLANS, VIEWS, PORTRAITS, AND
A BIBLIOGRAPHY

VOLUME ONE
PART II
Journals and Orderly Book of Lewis and Clark, from
the Vermilion River to Two-Thousand-Mile Creek
Aug. 25, 1804 — May 5, 1805
Of this Edition on Imperial Japan Paper fifty copies only have been printed of which this is No.
ORIGINAL JOURNALS
OF THE

1804-1806

PRINTED FROM THE ORIGINAL MANUSCRIPTS
in the Library of the American Philosophical Society and
by Direction of its committee on Historical Documents:
TOGETHER WITH
MANUSCRIPT MATERIAL OF LEWIS AND CLARK
from other sources, including Note-Books, Letters, Maps, etc.,
and the Journals of Charles Floyd and Joseph Whitehouse

NOW FOR THE FIRST TIME PUBLISHED IN FULL
AND EXACTLY AS WRITTEN

Edited, with Introduction, Notes, and Index, by
REUBEN GOLD THWAITES, L.L.D.
Editor of "The Jesuit Relations and Allied Documents," etc.

VOLUME ONE
Part II

NEW YORK

1904
CONTENTS TO VOL. I

PART II

CHAPTER III. — FROM THE VERMILION TO TETON RIVER
Clark's Journal, August 24—September 24, 1804.
Entries and Orders by Lewis, August 26, 28, and September 16, 1804.

CHAPTER IV. — FROM TETON RIVER TO THE MANDANS
Clark's Journal and Orders, September 25—October 26, 1804.
Order by Lewis, October 17.

CHAPTER V. — AMONG THE MANDANS
Clark's Journal, October 27—December 27, 1804.

CHAPTER VI. — AMONG THE MANDANS
Clark's Journal, December 28, 1804—February 1, 1805; February 17—March 21, 1805.
Entries by Lewis, February 3-13 and March 16.

CHAPTER VII. — FROM FORT MANDAN TO THE YELLOWSTONE
Clark's Journal, March 22—April 27, 1805.
Lewis's Journal, April 28—27.

CHAPTER VIII. — FROM THE YELLOWSTONE TO THE MUSSELHELL (Part I.)
Lewis's Journal, April 28—May 5, 1805.
Clark's Journal, April 28—May 5.
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

VOL. I—PART II

Abdih-Hiddisch, a Minatarre Chief . . . . . . . Frontispiece
Punka Indians, on the Missouri River . . . . . . . 128
Sketch Plan of Fortification . . . . . . . . . . . 130
Pachtuwa-Chta, an Aruikkara Warrior . . . . . . . 150
Mândeh-Pâhehu, a young Mandan Indian . . . . . . . 166
Page from the Orderly Book, signed by both Lewis and Clark . 184
A Mandan Village . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 220
Manuscript Page by Clark, dated Dec. 24, 1804 . . . . 238
Nôâpeh, an Assiniboine Indian . . . . . . . . . . . 244
War Hatchet (text cut) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 251
Battle Axe (text cut) . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 255
Offering of the Mandan Indians . . . . . . . . . . . . 260
Interior of the Hut of a Mandan Chief . . . . . . . . . . 272
Sketch Map by Clark of Red and St. Peters Rivers . . . 286
Dance of Mandan Women . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 292
Idols of the Mandan Indians . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 300
Manuscript Page, by Lewis, dated Apr. 18, 1805 . . . . 306
Dog Sledge of the Mandan Indians . . . . . . . . . . . 320
Scalp Dance of the Minatarre Indians . . . . . . . . . . 330
Winter Village of the Minatarre Indians . . . . . . . . . 352
Junction of the Missouri and Yellowstone Rivers . . . . 368
Tree Tombs of the Assiniboine Indians . . . . . . . . . . 374
A CLOUDY morning Cap' Lewis & Myself concluded to go and See the Mound which was Viewed with Such terror by all the different Nations in this quarter, we Selected Shields; J. Fields, W. Bratten, Serg' Ordway, J. Coller, Carr, and Corp' Worlington & Frasure, also G. Drewyer and dropped down to the Mouth of White Stone River, where we left the Perogue with two men and at 200 yards we assended a rising ground of about Sixty feet, from the top of this High land the Countrie is leavel & open as far as can be Seen, except Some few rises at a great Distance, and the Mound which the Indians Call Mountain of little people or Spirits, this Mound appears of a conic form & is N. 20. W. from the mouth of the Creek,¹ we left the river at 8 oClock, at 4 miles we Crossed the Creek 23 yards wide in an extensive Valley and Countinued on at two miles further our Dog was so Heeted and fatigued we was obliged [to] Send him back to the Creek, at 12 oClock we arrived at the hill Cap' Lewis much fatigued from heat the day it being very hot & he being in a debilitated State from the Precautions he was obliged to take to prevent the effects of the Cobalt, & Min' Substance which had like to have poisoned him two days ago, his want of water, and Several of the men complaining of Great thirst, determined us to make for the first water which was the Creek

¹ Known locally, and named on some maps, as Spirit Mound. For description of its more recent appearance, see Amer. Antiquarian, Sept. 1891, p. 289. — Ed.

[121]
in a bend N. E. from the Mound, about 3 miles. after a
Delay of about 1 hour & a half to recruit our party we set out
on our return down the Creek thro; the bottom of about 1
mile in width, crossed the creek 3 times to the place we first
struck it, where we gathered some deliciouus froot such as
Grapes, Plumbs, & Blue Currents after a Delay of an hour
we set out on our back trail & arrived at the Perogue at Sun
set. We proceeded on to the Place we Camp'd last night and
Stayed all night.

This Mound is Situated on an elivated plain in a leavel and
extensive prarie, bearing N. 20° W. from the Mouth of White
Stone Creek nine miles, the base of the Mound is a regular
parallelogram the long Side of which is about 300 yards in
length the Shorter 60 or 70 yards. from the longer Side of
the Base it rises from the North & South with a Steep assent
to the hight of 65 or 70 feet, leaving a leavel Plain on the
top of 12 feet in width & 90 in length. The North & South
part of this Mound is join[ed] by two regular rises, each in
Oval forms of half its hight, forming three regular rises from
the Plain the assent of each elivated part is as Suden as the
principal mound at the narrower sides of its Base.

The regualar form of this hill would in Some measure justify
a belief that it owed its orrigin to the hand of man; but as the
earth and loos pebbles and other substances of which it was
Composed, bore an exact resemblance to the Steep Ground
which border on the Creek in its neighbourhood we concluded
it was most probably the production of nature.

The only remarkable Characteristic of this hill admitting it
to be a natural production is that it is insulated or Sperated a
considerable distance from any other, which is very unusal in
the natural order or disposition of the hills.

The Surrounding Plains is open Void of Timber and leavel
to a great extent, hence the wind from whatever quarter it may
blow, drives with unusal force over the naked Plains and
against this hill; the insects of various kinds are thus involun-
tarily driven to the Mound by the force of the wind, or fly to
its Leeward Side for Shelter; the Small Birds whose ffood they
are, Consequently resort in great numbers to this place in

[ 122 ]
Such of them; Particularly the Small brown Martin of which we saw a vast number hovering on the Leward Side of the hill, when we approached it in the act of catching those insects; they were so gentle that they did not quit the place until we had arriv'd within a few feet of them.

One evidence which the Ind:give for believing this place to be the residence of Some unusual Sperits is that they frequently discover a large assemblage of Birds about this Mound [this] is in my opinion a Sufficent proof to produce in the Savage Mind a Confident belief of all the properties which they ascribe [to] it.

from the top of this Mound we beheld a most butifull landscape; Numerous herds of buffalow were Seen feeding in various directions; the Plain to North N. W. & N. E. extends without interuption as far as Can be seen.

From the Mound to the Mouth of Stone River is S. 20° E. 9 Miles. to the woods near the mouth of River Jacque is West. to the Highland near the mouth of Sones River is S. 70° E. to the highland opposit side or near the Maha Town is S. 45 E.

Some high lands to be seen from the Mound at a Great distance to the N. E. some nearer to the N. W. No woods except on the Missourie Points.

if all the timber which is on the Stone Creek was on 100 acres it would not be thickly timbered, the Soil of those Plains are delightfull.

Great numbers of Birds are seen in those Plains, Such as black bird, ren, [wren] or Prarie burd, a kind of larke about the sise of a Partridge with a Short tail, &c., &c.,

the Boat under the Com' of Serj' Pryor proceeded on in our absence, (after jurking the Elk I Killed yesterday) Six Miles and Camped on the Larboard Side R. Fields brought in five Deer, George Shannon Killed an Elk Buck Som rain this evening.

We Set the Praries on fire as a signal for the Souses to Come to the River.
LEWIS AND CLARK JOURNALS  [Aug. 26]

Course Dist' & Ref' Aug' 25th

S. 12 W. 1 M. on the p' on S. S. ops a Bluff of Blue Clay which is on the L. S.
West 1/2 M. on the p' S. S. ops the Bluff.
N. 22 E. 3 M. to a p' of high Willows on the L. S. ops a Sand Island passed a Sand bar on the L. S.
N. 42 W. 1 M. on the L. S. ops Sand Island
S. 86 W. 1/2 M. on the L. S. to a p' of Willows the camp

26th August Sunday 1804.—

(Joined the Boat at 9 oClock A.M.) after jerking the meat Killed yesterday and preparing the Elk Skins for a Toe Roape, we Set out Leaveing Drewyer & Shannon to hunt the horses which was lost with directions to follow us keeping on the high lands.

proceeded on passed a cliff of White and Blue or Dark Earth of 2 miles in extent on the L. S. and camped on a Sand bar opposed the old village Called Petite Arc. a Small Creek falls into the river 15 yd. wide below the Village on the Same Side L. S. this Village was built by a Indian Chief of the Maha nation by the name of Petite Arc (or little Bow) displeas'd with the Great Chief of that nation (Black Bird) Separated with 200 men and built a village at this place after his death the two Villages joined, ap' Pat. Gass a Serg vice Floyd Deceased.

Great q'ty of Grapes, Plumbs of three Kinds, 2 yellow and large one of which is long and a 3rd kind round & red all well flavored, particularly the yellow sort.

Course Distance & ref' Aug' 26th

S. 86 W. 2 M. to a Sand bar Makeing out from the S. S.
N. 82 W. 7 M. to a p' of Willows on the S. S. passed an Island on S. S. and large Sand bar on both Sides of the river and Camped opposit the mouth of Arc Creek — the river below wide.

1 Now Bow Creek, Cedar Co., Nebr. — Ed.
The commanding officers have thought proper to appoint Patric Gass, a Sergeant in the corps of volunteers for North Western Discovery; he is therefore to be obeyed and respected accordingly.

Serg' Gass is directed to take charge of the late Serg' Floyd's mess, and immediately to enter on the discharge of such other duties, as have by their previous orders been prescribed for the government of the Sergeants of this corps.

The Commanding officers have every reason to hope from the previous faithful services of Serg' Gass, that this expression of their approbation will be still further confirmed by his vigilant attention in future to his duties as a Sergeant. The Commanding officers are still further confirmed in the high opinion they had previously formed of the capacity, diligence and integrity of Serg' Gass, from the wish expressed by a large majority of his comrades for his appointment as Sergeant.

Meriwether Lewis,
Cap'n U. S. Reg't Infantry.
Wm. Clark Capt &c.

This morning the Star call'd the morning Star much larger than Common, G. Drewyer came up and informed that he could neither find Shannon nor horses, we sent Shields & J Fields, back to hunt Shannon & the horses, with directions to keep on the Hills to the Grand Calumet above on River Kacure (quecure)¹.

We Set Sail under a gentle Breeze from the S. E. at 7 miles passed a White Clay Marl or Chalk Bluff under this Bluff [which] is extensive I discovered large Stone much like lime incrusted with a clear substance which I believe to be Cobalt, also Ore is embeded in the Dark earth, resembling Slate [but] much Sorter. above this Bluff we had the Prairie

¹ A corruption of Rivière que Cœur, the French name of the Niobrara (or Rapid) River. — Ed.
Set on fire to let the Soues See that we were on the river, and as a Signal for them to Come to it.

At 2 oClock passed the Mouth of River Jacque [or Yeankton] 1 one Indian at the mouth of this river Swim to the Perogue, we landed and two others Came to us, those Ind: informed that a large Camp of Soues, were on R. Jacque near the mouth. We sent Serj Pryor & a Frenchman with M' Durion, the Soues interpeter to the Camp with directions to invite the principal Chiefs to Council with us at a Bluff above Called the Calumet, two of those Indians accompanied them and the third continued in the Boat Showing an inclination to Continue, this boy is a Mahar, and inform that his nation, were gone to the Parnies [Panches] to make a peace with that nation.

We proceeded on about one and a half miles and inCamped on a bar makeing out from the S. S. the wind blew hard from the South. A cool and Pleasent evening, The river has fallen verry slowly and is now low.

Course Di8 & Refr Augst 27.

N. 73 W. 7 Miles to the upper part of a Calx or Chalk Bluff on the L. S. having pass'd a large Sand bar on the L. S. and two on the S. S. also some Small Bars in the R.

North 3 M' to a tree in a head to the S. S. pass 2 Sand bars in the river.

West 2 1/2 Ml's to the Mouth of River Jacque on the S. S. two large Sand bars on the L. S.

S. 80° W. 1 1/4 M's on the Side of a large Mud bar Makeing out above the River Jacque or Yeankton.

This river about 85 or 90 yds. Wide and is navagable for Perogues a Great distance, it heads with the S' Peters, of the Mississippi & the red River which runs into Lake Winipeck and Hudsons Bay.

---

1 The James (or Dakota) River. — Ed.
Set out under a Stiff Breeze from the South and proceeded on pass'd a Willow Island at 2 Miles several Sand bars, the [river] Wide & Shallow at 4 miles passed a Short White Bluff of about 70 or 80 feet high, below this Bluff the Prairie rises gradually from the water back to the Hight of the Bluff which is on the Starboard Side here the Indian who was in the boat returned to the Souses [Sioue] Camp on the R Jacque. Cap' Lewis & my Self much indisposed owing to Some cause for which we cannot account one of the Perogues run a Snag thro her and was near Sinking in the opinions of the Crew, we came too below the Calumet Bluff and formed a Camp in a Butifull Plain near the foot of the high land which rises with a gradual assent near this Bluff. I observe more timber in the Valeys & on the Points than usual. The Perogue which was injured I had unloaded and the Loading put into the other Perogue which we intended to Send back & changed the Crew after examoning her & finding that She was unfit for service determined to Send her back by the party Some load which was in the Perogue much Injur'd.

The wind blew hard this afternoon from the South. J. Shields & J. Fields who was Sent back to look for Shannon and the Horses joined us and informed that Shannon had the horses ahead and that they Could not overtake him This man not being a first rate Hunter, we deturmined to Send one man in pursute of him with some Provisions.

Course Dis: & Refr’ 28th Aug 1804.
S. 76. W. 4 1/2 M. to the lower part of a Bluff of a Brownish red on S. S. pass'd Sev Sand bars.
S. 60° W. 4 M. to the lower part of the Calumet Bluff L. S. passed a p' on east Side and Several Sand bars.

1 In Knox Co., Nebr., opposite Lower Buffalo Island. — Courses (L. and C., i, p. 90). Nearly opposite Yankton, a little below. — E. E. Blackman.
The commanding officers direct that the two messes who form the crews of the perogues shall select each one man from their mess for the purpose of cooking, and that these cooks as well as those previously appointed to the messes of the Barge crew, shall in future be exempted from mounting guard, or any detail for that duty; they are therefore no longer to be held on the royaster.

M. Lewis Cap't
1st. U. S. Reg't Inf'ty.
Wm. Clark Cap't &c

Some rain last night & this morning. Sent on Colter with Provisions in pursuit of Shannon, had a Toe roap made of Elk Skin. I am much engaged writing. at 4 oClock P. M. Serg't Pryor & M' Dorion with 5 Chiefs and about 70 men & boys arrived on the opposit Side we Sent over a Perogue & Mr. Dorrion & his Son who was tradeing with the Indians came over with Serg't Pryor, and informed us that the Chiefs were there we sent Serg't Pryor & young Mr. Dorion\(^1\) with Som' Tobacco, Corn and a few Kittles for them to Cook in, with directions to inform the Chiefs that we would Speek to them tomorrow.

Those Indians brought with them for their own use 2 Elk & 6 Deer which the young men Killed on the way from their Camp 12 Miles distant.

Serg't Pryor informs me that when [they] came near the Indian Camp they were met by men with a Buffalow roabe to carry them, M' Dorion informed they were not the owners of the Boats & did not wish to be carried" the Scoues Camps are handsom of a Conic form Covered with Buffalow Roabs Painted different colours and all compact & handsomly arranged, Covered all round an open part in the Centre for the fire, with Buffalow roabs, each Lodg has a place for

---

\(^1\) The younger Dorion was afterward slain on the headwaters of the Columbia, while trapping for the unfortunate Astoria expedition. — J. N. Basket.
PUNIA INDIANS ENCAMPED ON THE BANKS OF THE MISSOURI.
Cooking detached, the lodges contain from 10 to 15 persons. A Fat Dog was presented as a mark of their great respect for the party of which they partook heartily and thought it good and well flavored.

The River Jacque is Deep & is navigable for Perogues a long distance up at the Mouth it is Shallow & narrow but above it is 80 or 90 yards Wide passing thro' rich Prairies with but little timber. This river passes the Souix River and heads with the S! Peters and a branch of Red river which falls into Lake Winepeck to the North.

30th of August Thursday 1804

A very thick fog this morning after preparing some presents for the Cheifs which we intended [to] make by giving Meadels, and finishing a Speech which we intended to give them, we sent M' Dorion in a Perogue for the Cheifs and Warriers to a Council under an Oak Tree near where we had a flag flying on a high flagstaff at 12 oClock we met and Cap. L Delivered the Speech & then made one great Chief by giving him a Meadel & Some Cloathes, one 2nd Chief & three Third Chiefs in the same way, they received those things with the goods and tobacco with pleasure. To the Grand Chief we gave a Flag and the parole (certificate) & Wampom with a hat & Chief Coat. We Smoked out of the Pipe of Peace, & the Chiefs retired to a Bourey [Bowray] made of bushes by their young men to divide their presents and Smoke eate and Council. Capt. Lewis & My self retired to dinner and consult about other measures. M' Dorion is much displeased that we did not invite him to dine with us (which he was sorry for afterwards). The Souex is a Stout bold looking

---

1 For excellent description and illustrations of these medals (first-grade), see Wheeler, *On the Trail of Lewis and Clark* (N. Y., 1904), i, pp. 139, 140. Three of the medals distributed by Lewis and Clark have since been found — at the mouth of Wallawalla River, at Fort Clatsop, and at the mouth of Potlatch River, respectively. — Ed.

2 Described by Biddle as "a richly laced uniform of the United States artillery corps, with a cocked hat and red feather." — Ed.
people, (the young men handsom) & well made, the greater part of them make use of Bows & arrows, Some few fusees I observe among them, not with standing they live by the Bow and arrow, they do not Shoot So Well as the Northern Indians the Warriors are Very much deckerated with Paint Porcupine quills & feathers, large leagins and mockersons, all with buffalow roabs of Different Colours. the Squars wore Peticotes & a White Buffalo roabe with the black hare turned back over their necks and Sholders.

I will here remark a **SOCIETY** \(^1\) which I had never before this day heard was in any nation of Indians, four of which is at this time present and all who remain of this Band. Those who become Members of this Society must be brave active young men who take a Vow never to give back the danger be what it may, in War Parties they always go forward without screening themselves behind trees or anything else to this Vow they Strictly adhered during their Lives. an instance which happened not long sence, on a party in Crossing the R Missourie on the ice, a whole was in the ice immediately in their Course which might easily have been avoided by going around, the foremost man went on and was lost the others were draged around by the party. in a battle with the Crow\(^2\) [Kite] Indians who inhabit the **Cout Noir**\(^3\) or black Mountain out of 22 of this Society 18 was Killed, the remaining four was draged off by their Party Those men are likely fellows the[y] Set together Camp & Dance together. This Society is in imitation of the Societies of the de Curbo or Crow (De Corbeau, Kite) Indians, whom they imitate.

---

\(^1\) The "society" of warriors here described was one of the branches of "the military and social organization which existed among the Blackfeet, Sioux, Cheyenne, Kiowa, and probably all the prairie tribes except the Comanche in the South," according to Mooney (*U. S. Ethnol. Ref.*, 1892-93, pp. 986-989), who describes it as it existed among the Arapaho. — Ed.

\(^2\) The Crows are a Hidatsa tribe, allied to the Minitaree, and originally located on the Yellowstone River; in later years, they have been gathered on the Crow reservation in Montana. — Ed.

\(^3\) That is, **Côte Noir**. "Our authors use the term 'Black mountains' for any of the elevated country to the west of the Missouri in Northern Nebraska and both Dakotas." — Coues (*L. and C.*, i, p. 171).
after the Indians got their Brackfast the Chiefs met and arranged themselves in a row with elligent pipes of peace all pointing to our Seets, we Came foward and took our Seets, the Great Cheif The Shake hand rose and Spoke to some length aproving what we had said and promising to pursue the advice.

Mar io ree 2 Cheif (White Crain) [White Crane] rose and made a Short Speech and refured to the great Chief Par mar ne arpar be (struck by the Pania) 3 Chief rose and made a short speech Ar ea see char che (the half man) 3 Chief rose & Spoke at some length much to the [same] purpose. The other Cheif said but little. One of the Warriers Spoke after all was don & promised to Support the Cheifs, the[y] promis'd to go and See their Great father in the Spring with M. Dorion, and to do all things we had advised them to do, and all concluded by telling the distresses of their nation by not haveing traders, & wished us to take pity on them, the[y] wanted Powder Ball, & a little Milk [rum; milk of great father means spirits.]

last night the Indians Danced untill late in their Dances we gave them [throw into them as is usual] Som Knives Tobacco & bells & tape & Binding with which they wer Satisfied.

We gave a Certificate to two Men of War, attendants on the Chief. gave to all the Chiefs a Carrot of Tobacco. had a talk with Mr. Dorion, who agreed to Stay and Collect the Chiefs from as Many Bands of Soux as he could this fall & bring about a peace between the suocex and their neighbours &c. &c. &c.

After Dinner we gave Mr. Peter Dorion, a Commission to act with a flag and some Cloathes & Provisions & instructions

---

1 The names of these chiefs are thus given by Biddle: Weucha ("Shake Hand," called by the French Le Liberateur); Mahotoe ("White Crane"); Pawna-neah-palbe ("Struck by the Pawner"); and Asawwechee ("Half Man") — explained as probably originating in its owner's modesty, "who on being told of his exploits, would say, 'I am no warrior; I am only half a man.'" These speeches are given by Biddle in more detail. — Ed.

2 The entry for Aug. 31 to this point is misplaced in the Ms.; it is found on pp. 58-60 of Codex A, preceded by this memorandum: "omitted to put in the 31st of August in Place." — Ed.
to bring about a peace with the Seioux, Mahars, Panies, Poncas, Ottos & Missouries, and to employ any trader to take some of the Cheifs of each or as many of those nations as he could particularly the Seioux. I took a Vocabulary of the Suoux Language, and the Answer to a few queries such as referred to their Situation, Trade, Number, War, &c. &c. This Nation is divided into 20 Tribes, possessing separate interests. Collectively they are numerous say from 2 to 3000 men, their interests are so unconnected that some bands are at war with Nations [with] which other bands are on the most friendly terms. This Great Nation who the French has given the Nickname of Suoux, Call themselves Dar co tar [Dakota—Ed.] their language is not peculiarly their own, they Speak a great number of words, which is the same in every respect with the Maha, Poncarer, Osarge & Kanzas, which clearly proves that those nations at some period not more that a century or two past are of the same nation. Those Dar co tar's or Suoux inhabit or rove over the Country on the Red river of Lake Winipeck, St. Peters & the West of the Mississippie, above Praire De Cheen (Prairie de Chien) heads of River Demoin, and the Missouri and its waters on the N. Side for a great extent. They are only at peace with 8 nations, & agreeable to their calculation at war with twenty odd. Their trade comes from the British, except this Band and one on Demoin who trade with the Traders of St. Louis. They furnish Beaver, Martain, Loups, (Wooffs) Pekon, (Pichou) Bear & Deer Skins, and have about 40 Traders among them. The Dar co tar or Suouez rove & follow the Buffalow raise no corn or any thing else the woods & praries affording a sufficiency, they cat Meat, and Substitute the Ground potato which grow in the Plains for bread.

The Names of the Different Tribes or bands of the Seioux, or Dar co tar Nation.

1st Cher che Yankton (or bois ruley) (brali) now present inhabit the Suouex & Demoin Rivers and the Jacque. (200 men.)

2nd Ho in de borts (Poles) they live [rove] on the heads of Souex and Jacques Rivers.
VERMILION TO TETON

3rd Me Metcar jo (Make fence on the river) rove on the Country near the big bend of the Missouries.

4th Sau xo, Te ton (People of the Prairie) the[y] rove in the Plains N. of the Riv Missourie above this.

5th Wi an pa co tar (Leaf Beds) the[y] live near the Prairie de Chain Near the Missipp.

6th Te Car ton (or Village of Prairie) rove on the waters of the Mississippi above Prairie de Chain.

7th Ne Wi as tar ton (big Waters Town) rove on the Mississippi above the S' Peters River.

8th Wi an pa tone (Leaf Nation) live 10 Leagues up St. Peters River.

9th Cas Carba (White Man) live 35 Leagues up St. Peters river.

10th Mi ca en op si ba (Cut bank) rove on the head of St. Peters.

11th Sou en (———) rove on St. Peters river in the Praries.

12th Sou se toon (———) live 40 Leagues up the St. Peters river.

The names of the other bands neither of the Souex's interpers could inform me, in the evening late we gave M' Dourion a bottle of whiskey, & he with the Cheifs & his Son Crossed the river and Camped on the Opposit bank. Soon after night a violent wind from the N. W. with rain the rain Continued the greater part of the night. The river a rising a little.

September 17th Saturday 1804 —

M' Dourion lift his Kittle & Sent back for it &c. we Set out under a jentle Breeze from the S. (It rained half the last night) proceeded on pass the Bluffs comp's of a yellowish red, & Brownish (&) White Clay which is a[sc] hard as Chalk (and much resembling it) this Bluff is 170 or 180 feet high,

1 These tribes are enumerated very differently by Biddle, thus (i. pp. 61, 62): (1) Yankton - 200 warriors; (2) Teton of the burnt woods - 200 men; (3) Teton Okandandas - 150 men; (4) Teton Minakamino - 250 men; (5) Teton Sume - 200 men; (6) Yankton of the Plains, or Big Devils - 500 men; (7) Wahpatone - 200 men; (8) Minawarchon - 500 men; (9) Wahpatonu, or Leaf Beds - 150 men; (10) Sitasoum - 200 men. Cf. Lewis's "Statistical View of the Indian Nations Inhabiting the Territory of Louisiana," accompanying Jefferson's Message to Congress, Feb. 19, 1806 (Washington, 1806); the substance of this "View" will be republished in the appendix to the present work. For modern scientific classification, see Powell's "Indian Linguistic Families," in U. S. Bar. Ethnol. Rep., 1885-86, pp. 111-118. Cf. Wis. Hist. Collections, xvi, pp. 193, 194. — Ed.
here the High lands approach near the river on each Side, that on the S. S. not so high as that on the L. S. opposit the Bluffs is Situated a Large Island Covered with timber close under the L. S. above the 1s't the high land approach & form a Clift to the river on the S. S. this Clift is Called White Bear Clift one of those animals having been killed in a whole in it.

1° of September Saturday 1804 —

Some hard wind and rain, cloudy all day, the river Wide & hills on each Side near the river, pass2 a large (1) Island which appeared to be composed of Sand, Covered with Cotton wood close under the S. S. we landed at the lower point of a large Island on the S. S. Called bon homme or Good Man, here Cap. Lewis & my self went out a Short distance on the L. S. to See a Beaver house, which was Said to be of Great hite & Situated in a Pond. We could not find the house and returned after night Drewyer Killed an Elk, & a Beaver. numbers of Cat fish caught, those fish is so plenty that we catch them at any time and place in the river.

Course Dist. & reftr. 1° Sept.

N. 88° W. 4 M° to a high point of on the S. S. haveing pass'd an 1s't (1) on the L. S. & Several Sand bars.
S. 75° W. 2 M° to the lower p't of a large Island on S. S. passed a p't on the L. S. and a Sand bar.
S. 68° W. 4 M° to a p't on L. S. pass'd the upper p't of the Isl't SS, and some land with bows [boughs — Ed.] and evident marks of being made 24 [feet — Ed.] above water.
S. 80° W. 5 M° to a tree at the lower p't of Bon homme Island on S. S. haveing pass'd a p't on the S. S. a Deep bend of Sand and Willows on L. S.

2° of September Sunday 1804. —

Set out early and proceeded on passed the Island and Landed on the S. S. above under a Yellow Clay bluff of 110 feet high, the wind blew very hard ahead from the N. W. with some rain and very cold, G. Drewnyer R. Fields, Newman & Howard Killed four fine Elk we had the meat all jurked and
the Skins Dried to Cover the Perogue, on the Side of the Bluff I observed Bear Grass & Rhue, at Sun Set the wind luled and cleared up Cold, the high land on the L. S. is very high, & uneven, that on the S. S. from 80 to 120 foot & is leavel back but few Small Streams falling into the river.

Course Distance & cffs 2 3/4 Sp

N. 75° W. 3 M ½ to the lower part of an antient fortification (1) in a bend to the L. S. this Course passed over a p' of the Is & Sand.

N. 45 W. 1 M ½ on the L. p' pass'd the head of the Island at ½ of a mile op'd a yellow bank S. S.

I went out and made a Survey of the antient Works which is Situated in a level Plain about 3 Miles from the hills which are high.

A Discreption of the Fortification

(1) Commencing on the river op'd the Good Mans Island, first Course from the river is

S. 76° W. 96 yards thence

S. 84° W. 53 yards (at this angle a kind of angle or horn work)

N. 69° W. 300 yards to a high part, passing the gateway Covered by two half Circler works one back of the other lower than the main work the Gate forms a right angle projecting inward.

N. 32° W. 56 yards

N. 20° W. 73 yards. This part of the work appears to have [been] either double, or a covered way. from this Some irregular works appear to have been on mounds between this and the river, with a Deep round whole in the center of a Gorge formed by another angle. This part of the work is from 10 to 15 feet 8 Inches — the Mounds of Various hights the base of the work is from 75 to 105 feet, Steep inward and forming a kind of Glassee [Glacis] outwards.

N. 32° W. 96 yards to the Commencement of a Wall from 8 to 10 feet high this Course not on the Wall but thro to the commencement of another detached
This joined, N° N° widens which hight from in the Course of the bank which is about 8 feet high, from this Pond the bank lowers gradually. a bank about the same hight runs near the river, and must have joined the main work at a part which is now washed into the river, this is also perfectly Streight and widens from the main work, as the river above has washed in its banks for a great distance I cannot form an Idea of how those two long works joined. where they Strike the river above, they are about 1100 yds. apart,

[Another Description.]

N° 1 a Wall of the Antient Work Commencing on the bank of the River and running on a direct line S. 76° W. 96° yard, about 75 feet base and 8 feet high.

2. Wall Continued. and Course S. 84° W. 53° yards from an angle formed by a sloping decent N° 13. has the appearance of a hornwork of nearly the same hight of the former angle N° 1.

3. the Wall Continued on a Course N. 69° W. for 300 yards in which there is a low part of the wall which is Covered by two Circular and lower Walls one back of the other. 8. 8. which covers the gate way Completely, between those outer Walls 8. 8. there appears to have been a Covered way out of the Main work into the vacancy between those two Walls N° 9. This Wall No. 3 is 8 feet high and about 75 feet Bace.

4. a Wide part of the Wall which is about 12 feet high and 105 feet base on the Course N. 69° W. Continued from the gate way.

5. The Wall about 15 feet high and about 90 feet base on a course N. 32° W. for 56 yds.

6. the Wall Continues on a Course N. 28° W. for 73 yards and ends abruptly near a whole near several Mounds prismatically in the Gorge of the Work between this and the river.

10. N. 32° W. 96° yards across a low place much lower than the Common level of the plain to the Commencement of a wall of 8 feet high this is an open Space, from whence there is Some appearance of a Covered way to the Water.

1 This matter is found in Codex N, pp. 81-85. — Ed.

[136]
Ancient Fortification on the Missouri River,
sketch plan by Clark.
Ancient Fortification on the Missouri River,

sketch-plan by Clark.
10. is a large hollow place much lower then the plain
12. Several little Mounds in the gouge
7. the gateway to the Strong work.
14. a redoubt Situated on an Island which is making on the Side next to the Main Work, the wall forming this redoubt is 6 feet high
15. The river banks at the waters edge
16. a thick Wall of about 6 feet high passing from the Rivers edge at the gouge of the Work perfectly straight to the bend of the River above and there ends abruptly where the Missouri is under mining its banks on this Wall maney large Cotton Trees of two & 3 feet diameter, the Bank passes thro' a wood in its whole Course

N° 17. a Streight wall of 1830 yard extending from the Gouge of the strong work on a Course N. 81° W. This wall is 8 feet high to a round pon (N° 18) from then it becomes lower and strikes the Missouri at a place where that river has the app. [appearance] of having incroached on its banks for a great distance, this wall passes in its whole course thro' a level plain.
18. a Deep pond of 73 yards diameter in the Wall, perfectly round
20. Thro from the extremity of one Wall to the other 1100 yards.
21. a Small redoubt on the bank of the river.

The Strong part of this work which must be about 1/4 of it's original Size Contains Twenty acres.

The part Contained between the two Walls is about 500 acres, and it is Certain that those Walls have been longer and must have contained a much greater Space

I am informed by our french interpreters that a great number of those antient works are in Defferent parts of the Countrey, on the Plate River, Kansas, Jacque, Osarge, Mine river &c. A Small one is on [an] Island opposit the one I have Described, and two of our Party Saw two of those Antient f[or]resses on the Petteet. Are Creek on the upper Side near the Mouth, each angle of which were 100 yards and about 8 feet high.1

1 The opinion now prevails, that these "fortifications" were only natural formations, made by the drifting sand. — F. H.
a very Cold morning wind from N. W. we Set out at Sun rise, & proceeded on to a Bluff below the Mouth of Plumb Creek [12 yds] on the S. S. and took an obsevation of the Suns altitude.

This Creek is Small it "abounds with plumbs of a Delicious flavour" the River is Wide and Crowded with Sand bars, it is rising a little but little timber in this Countrey all that is, is on the river in the Points. we came too on the L. S. in the edge of a Plain an[d] Camped for the night. we Saw Some signs of the two men Shannon & Colter, Shannon appeared to be ahead of Colter. The White banks appear to continue on both sides of the river. Grapes plenty and finely flavored.

Course Disi & refri. 3rd Sept

West ½ M to the L. S. op$^1$ a Bluff
S. 35 W. 3 M to the Upper point of some wood at the foot of the high land on the L. S. in a bend of the river pass a large Sand bar 400 yds wide on the L. S. and a p' & Sand bar from the S. S.

West 5½ M to a obj' in a Deep bend to the S. S. pass$^4$ a p' S. S. and a large Sand bar on the L. S.
S. 45. W. 1 M to the Mouth of Plumb C' on the S. S. pass$^5$ and White bank.
South $\frac{5}{15}$ M to a p' on the S. S. pass$^6$ Several Sand bars & two p's on the L. S.

4th September Tuesday 1804. —

a very Cold Wind from the S. S. E. we Set out early and proceeded on [to] the Mouth of a Small Creek in a bend to the L. S. Called White lime, at 1½ Miles higher up passed a large Creek on the L. S. Called K. au Platte or White Paint$^1$ between those two Creeks (the latter of which is abt. 30 yd Wide) we passed under a Bluff of red Cedeer, at 4 M$^{11}$ passed the mouth of the River Que Courre (rapid R) on the L. S. and Came to a Short distance above. this River is 152

$^1$ Now Bazile creek. — Ed.
yards wide at the mouth & 4 feet deep throwing out sands like the Platt, (only Corser) forming bars in its mouth. I went up this river three miles to a butifull Plain on the upper side where the Panias once had a Village this River widens above its mouth and is divided by sands and Islands, the current very rapid, not navigable for even canoes without great difficulty owing to its sands; the colour like that of the Platt is light, the heads of this river is not known [on the Black Mount & waters a hilly country of indiffrent soil] it comes into the Missourie from the S. W. by West, and I am told that it is Genl Course Some distance up is parallel with the Missourie.

Course Dist & refer the 4th of Sept.

S. 5° 1/2 W. to the Mo. of a Creek on the L. S. below a Ceder Clift.
S. 35° 1/2 M. to the Mo. of White Paint River on the L. S. Passing under a Ceder Clift.
West 3 M. to the Upper p' of Wood on the L. S. up a Bluff of bluish Clay; a S' bar L. S.
N. 2° 1/2 W. 14 M. to a Mound on the L. S. a Bluff on the S. S. several Sand bars in the river
West 3/4 M. to the Mouth of the river. The course on the L. S. the hills leave the river on the S. S. river crowded with Sand bars, & wind hard.

[At the end of Codex B, written on the inside of the cover, is the following memorandum:]

US. Due 4 Sep' 1804

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Duebill</th>
<th>20.5</th>
<th>Howard</th>
<th>8.10</th>
<th>Willard</th>
<th>13.55</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

After this I will put the Course Distance & references of each day first and remark after.
Course Dis° & Ref° — Sept. 5th

N. 85° W. 2 M. to a Willow p' on the S. S. a Bluff ops!
N. 35° W. 3 M. to a high part of a Bluff on the S. S. a large Isl. Called Pania Isl in Middle of the river.
N. 58° W. 3½ to a Creek on the S. S. ps the Isl at 1 M. a Sand bar making from it. Poncarar [Ponca] River opposite on the L. S. 30 yds.
West 3½ M. to the Lower point of a large Island near the L. Side (1)
N. 70° W. 1 3/4 M. to the right Side of the S' Island to the head passed a Willow Isl & a Sand bar

September 5th Wednesday 1804 —

Set out early the wind blew hard from the South, Goats, turkeys Seen today, passed a large Island (1) ops this Island near the head the Poncarars River Comes into the Missouri from the West this river is about 30 yards wide. dispatched two men to the Poncaries Village Situated in a handsom Plain on the lower Side of this Creek about two miles from the Missouri the Poncarars Nations is Small¹ and at this time out in the praries hunting the Buffalo, one of the men Sent to the Village Killed a Buffalo in the town, the other, a large Buck near it. Some Sign of the two men who is a head. above the Island on the S. S. we passed under a Bluff² of Blue earth, under which Several Mineral Springs broke out the water of which had a taste like Salts. We Came too on the upper point of a large Island (which I call No preserves Island) here we made a Ceedar Mast, our hunters brought in three bucks, and two elks this evening which we had jurked.

One of the hunters Shields, informed that he Saw Several black tailed Deer, near the Poncarer Village

¹ The Biddle text states (i, p. 66) that this Ponca tribe, which had once numbered 400 men, was then reduced to about fifty, who had taken refuge with the Omaha. Both tribes had been sedentary, but were driven from their villages by war and pestilence. — Ed.
² Now called Chouteau Bluffs. — Ed.
VERMILION TO TETON

Course Distance and references. — 6th Sept 1804.

N. 85° W. 7° Miles passed a p' on the S. S. at 10, M' above which is a large Sand bar on L. S. a high Cliff of Blue & redish soft rock, Colter joined us.

a Storm this morning from the N. W. which lasted a few minutes, we Set out and proceeded on passed the head of the Is' which is seperated from the L. S. by a narrow Channel, a hard wind from the N. W. a verry Cold day, we camped on the S. S. at the upper point of Some timber, Sometime before Night, no timber, [being in reach.] I saw Several goats¹ on the hills on the S. S. also Buffalow in great numbers.

Course Distance & references. — 7th Sept 1804.

N. 60° W. 3° Miles to the p' of a Bluff on the S. S. op'd a p' on L. S. West 2 12 Miles to a tree in a bend to the L. S. near the foot of a round mountain resembling a Cupola (1) passed 2 Small Is. 6° S. S.

Sept. 7th. Friday —

a verry Cold morning wind S. E. Set out at day light we landed after proceeding 5 1/2 Miles, near the foot of a round Mounting, which I saw yesterday, resembling a dome.² Cap. Lewis & My self walked up to the top which forms a Cone and is about 300 feet higher than the high lands around it, the Base is about 300 foot in decending this Cupola, discovered a Village of Small animals that burrow in the ground (those animals are Called by the French Petite Chien) Killed one and Caught one a live by poring a great quantity of Water in his hole³ we attempted to dig to the beds of one of those animals, after

¹ These "goats" were antelopes (Antilocapra Americana). This animal was new to science when discovered by Lewis and Clark in 1804, and was not technically named until 1815. — Cour. (1. and C., p. 139).
² A conspicuous landmark, now known as "the Tower." — Ed.
³ Gass says (p. 51) regarding this attempt, that "all the party, except the guard, went to it; and took with them all the Kettles and other vessels for holding water; but though they worked at the business till night, they only caught one of them." — Ed.
diging 6 feet, found by running a pole down that we were not half way to his Lodge, we found 2 frogs in the hole, and Killed a Dark rattlet Snake near with a Ground rat (or prairie dog) in him, (those rats are numerous) the Village of those animals Cov: about 4 acres of Ground on a gradual decent of a hill and Contains great numbers of holes on the top of which those little animals Set erect make a Whistling noise and whin allarmed Step into their hole. we por'd into one of the holes 5 barrels of Water without filling it. Those Animals are about the Size of a Small Squ[jr]rel Shorter (or longer) & thicker, the head much resembling a Squirrel in every respect, except the ears which is Shorter, his tail like a ground squirel which they shake & whistle when allarned; the toe nails long, they have fine fur & the longer hairs is gray, it is Said that a kind of Lizard also a Snake reside with those animals. (did not find this correct.) Camped.

Course Distance & referrences. — 8th Sept:
N. 35. W. 7 M¥ to a p' on L. S. ops! the house of M'Troodo
where he wintered in 96 & Seven Called the Pania
hov in a woood [d] to the S. S. (1)
N. 88° W. 12 M to a p' of woods S. S. one mile above the commencement of this Course the Low' p' of a Willow

8th of September Saturday —
Set out early and proceeded on under a gentle Breeze from the S. E. at 3 M passed the house of Troodo where he wintered in 96. Called the Pania house, above is high hills on the S. S. on the S. S. much higher hills than usual appear to the North distant 8 Miles recently burnt. pass 3 Small Islands at about 5 Miles on this Course on the S. S. here Cap. Lewis Killed a Buffalow in the river, and the Men one other Came to on the lower point of an Island in the middle of the river Called Boat Island and incamped, jurked the meat Killed

1 The prairie-dog (Cynomys ludovicianus), then unknown to scientists; Coues thinks that Clark and Gass were the first to describe it. — Ed.
2 The present Chicot Island; a little above the present Fort Randall. — Ed.
to day Consisting of 2 buffalow, one large Buck Elk, one Small, 4 Deer 3 Turkeys & a Squiriel, I joined the boat at this Camp, the Countrey on the S. S. is poor & broken.

Course Distance & Reference. - 12 Sept.

N. 34 W. 3 M. to a p' on an Island on the L. S. of an Is' passed sand bars.
N. 42 W. 3 M. to an upper p' of a Wood in a bend S. S.
N. 83 W. 4 M. to a p' on S. S.
N. 44 W. 2 M. to the upper p' of a Wood L. S.

Set out at Sunrise and proceeded on passed the head of the Island on which we Camped, passed three sand & Willow Islands, the sand bars so numerous, it is not worth mentioning them, the river Shoal or Shallow wind S. E. Came too and Camped on a sand bar on the L. S. Capt. Lewis went out to kill a buffalow. I walked on shore all this evening with a view to Kill a goat or Some Prairie Dogs in the evening after the boat landed. I Directed My Servent York with me to kill a Buffalow near the boat from a Numb' then Scattered in the Plains. I saw at one view near the river at least 500 Buffalow, those animals have been in view all day feeding in the Plains on the L. S. every Corpse of timber appear to have Elk or Deer. D. Killed 3 Deer, I killed a Buffalo Y. 2, R. Fields one.

Course Distance & Reference. - 15 Sept.

North 5 M. to a San. Is' und a Buff to the S. S. passed Is' on L. S.
N. 65 W. 2 M. to a p' on the L. S. pass the Is' on the L. S.
N. 82 W. 3 M. on the L. S.
N. 85 W. 3 M. to Cedar Island in the Middle of the R. found a fish back bone pitrefied also the h' just below the Is' on the top of a hill Situated on the L. S.
N. 75 W. 8½ M. to the Low' p' of an Is' in a bend to the L. S. pass the h' of Cedar Island (2) and a large Is' on the S. S. (3) & Many sand bars Shallow.
N. 35 W. 1 M to the Lower p' of a Small Island separated by a Narrow Channel.
LEWIS AND CLARK JOURNALS

[Sept. 10]

Sept. 10th. Monday 1804 —

a cloudy dark morning. Set out early, a gentle breeze from the S. E. passed two Small Islands on the L. S. and one on the S. S. all in the first Course at 10 1/2 Miles passed the lower point of an (2) Island covered with red Cedar. Situated in a bend on the L. S. this Island is about 2 Miles in length (1) below this on a hill on the L. S. we found the back bone of a fish, 45 feet long tapering to the tale, Some teeth &c. those joints were seperated and all petrified. opposit this Island 1 1/2 Miles from the river on the L. S. is a large Salt Spring of remarkable Salt Water. one other high up the hill 1/2 Mile not So Salt. we proceeded on under a Stiff Breeze. three Miles above Cedar Island passed a large Island on the S. S. no water on that Side. (3) Several elk Swam to this Island passed a Small Island near the center of the river, of a Mile in length, and Camped on one above seperated from the other by a Narrow Chanel, those Islands are called Mud Islands. the hunters killed 3 Buffalo & one Elk to day. The river is falling a little. Great number of Buffalo & Elk on the hill Side feeding deer scarce.

Course Distance & ref! 11th Sep't.

N. 35° W. 45° M to the lower p' of an Island, passed the Is! on which we Camp'd
N. 70° W. 2 M to the head of the Island on its L. S.
N. 45° W. 3 M to a p' on the L. S. below an Island (1)
N. 50° W. 2 M to the Upper p' of an Island on the S. S.; passed one on the L. S. opp's to which at 1/4 of a Mile is a Village of the Barking Squirrel L. S.
West 41/16 M to a p' on the L. S. passed an Is! on the S. S. just above the one mentioned in the last Course;

Sept. 11th. Tuesday 1804 —

A cloudy morning. Set out very early, the river wide & Shallow the bottom narrow, & the river crowded with Sand bars, passed the Island on which we lay at one mile. Passed three Islands one on the L. S. and 2 on the S. S. opposit the Island on the L. S. I saw a Village of Barking Squirrel
[prairie-dog — Ed.] 970 yds. long, and 800 yds. wide situated on a gentle slope of a hill, those animals are numerous. I killed 4 with a view to have their skins stuffed.

Here the man who left us with the horses 22 (16) days ago George Shannon. He started 26 Aug. and has been a head ever since joined us nearly. He had been 12 days without any thing to eat but Grapes & one rabbit, which he killed by shooting a piece of hard stick in place of a ball. This man supposing the boat to be a head pushed on as long as he could, when he became weak and feable determined to lay by and wait for a trading boat, which is expected. Keeping one horse for the last resource, thus a man had like to have starved to death in a land of plenty for the want of Bullitts or something to kill his meat.

We camped on the L. S. above the mouth of a run a hard rain all the afternoon, & most of the night, with hard wind from the N. W. I walked on shore the fore part of this day over some broken country which continues about 3 miles back & then is level & rich all plains, I saw several foxes & killed a Elk & 2 Deer & Squirrels. the men with me killed an Elk, 2 Deer & a Pelican.

Course Distance & reef's Sept 12th

N. 45° W. 4 miles to a point of wood on the L. S. Passed an island in the center of the river and several sand bars (1) on which we found great difficulty in passing the water being very shallow.

Sept 12th Wednesday 1804 —

A dark cloudy day the wind hard from the N. W. We passed (1) an island in the middle of the river at the head of which we found great difficulty in passing between the sand bars the water swift and shallow, it took 3 1/2 of the day to make one mile, we camped on the L. S. op's a village of Barking Prairie Squirrels.

I walked out in the morning and saw several villages of those little animals, also a great number of grous & 3 foxes, and observed slate & coal mixed. Some very high hills on each side of the river. rain a little all day.
LEWIS AND CLARK JOURNALS [Sept. 13]

Course Distance and references Sep' 13th

N. 45° E. 1 ½ M° on the L. S. a Sand bar Making out.
N. 39° E. 1 M° on the L. Side.
N. 0° W. 1 M° on the L. S. to a Clift.
N. 0° W. 2 ¾ M° on the L. S. to the Commencement of a wood
passing under a Bluff of Slate & Coal, & a Sand
bar opposit.

North 1 ½ M° to a p' of high Land on the S. S. pass'd Sand bars
on both Sides, Shallow.
N. 10° W. 4 M° to the lower p' of a timber passing under a Bluff,
a Sand & Willow Island on the L. S.

13th Sep.' Thursday 1804 —

A Dark drizzley Day, G. D. Cought 4 Beaver last night
the wind from the NW. Cold. Set out early and proceeded
on very well, passed a number of Sand bars, Cap' Lewis
Killed a Porcupin on a Cotton tree feeding on the leaves &
bowers [boughs — Ed.] of the said tree, the water is very
Shallow (in places) being Crowded with Sand bars Camped
on the S. Side under a Bluff. the Bluff on the S. Side not so
much impregnated with mineral as on the L. Side. Muskeeters
very troublesome.

Course Distance and references Sep' 14

N. 68° W. 2 ¾ M° to a p' of high Land on the L. S. pass'd a round
Island on the S. S.
S. 70° W. 2 ½ M° to a tree in the p' on the L. S. passed the Mo.
of a run on the L. S.
N. 4° W. 2 ½ M° to the mouth of a Small Creek on the bend to
the L. S.
N. 10° E. 1 ½ M° to the Mouth of a Creek on the L. S. passed
a bad Sand bar.

14th Sep' Friday 1804 —

Set out early proceeded on Passed several Sand bars the
river wide and Shallow. 3 Beaver caught last night, Drizeley
rain in the forepart of the day, Cloudy and disagreeable. 1

1 A little above the present site of Brule City, S. D. — COUES (L. and C., i, p. 116).

[ 146 ]
walked on Shore with a view to find an old Vulcanoe, Said to be in this neighbourhood by Mr. J. McKey of S' Charles. I walked on Shore the whole day without Seeing any appearance of the Vulcanoe, in my walk I killed a Buck Goat [antelope — Ed.] of this Countrey, about the hight of the Grown Deer, its body Shorther the Horns which is not very hard and forks \( \frac{1}{3} \) up one prong Short the other round & Sharp arched, and is immediatly above its Eyes the Colour is a light gray with black behind its ears down its neck, and its face white round its neck, its Sides and its rump round its tail which is Short & white: Verry actively made, has only a pair of hoots to each foot, its brains on the back of its head, his Norstrals large, his eyes like a Sheep he is more like the Antilope or Gazella of Africa than any other Species of Goat. Shields killed a Hare like the mountain hare of Europe, weighing 6\( \frac{1}{4} \) pounds (altho pore) his head narrow, its ears large i.e. 6 Inches long & 3 Inches Wide one half of each White, the other & out part a lead Grey from the toe of the hind foot to toe of the for foot is 2 feet 11 Inches, the hith is 1 foot 1 Inch & \( \frac{3}{4} \), his tail long thick & white.

The rain Continued the Greater part of the day in My ramble I observed, that all those parts of the hills which was clear of Grass easily dissolved and washed into the river and bottoms, and those hills under which the river runs, Sliped into it and dissolves and mixes with the water of the river, the bottoms of the river was covered with the water and mud frome the hills about three Inches deep, those bottoms under the hills which is covered with Grass, also receives a great quantity of mud.

Passed 2 Small Creeks on the L. S. and Camped below the third, (the place that Shannon the man who went a head lived on grapes) Som heavy Showers of rain all wet, had the Goat & rabit Stufed rained all night.

\[ 1 \] The northern jackass-rabbit (Lepus campestris). — Ed.
LEWIS AND CLARK JOURNALS [Sept. 15]

Course Distance & references 15th Sep^I

N. 50° E. 2 M's to the mouth of White River (1) L. S. passed Sand bars, &c.
N. 28° E. 1 3 M's to a point on the L. S. a Bluff on the S. S.
N. 10° W. 1 2 M's on the L. S. to the commencement of a Bluff of black Slate
N. 30° W. 2 M's to the lower point of an Island situated near the L. Side (2)
North 2 Miles to the mouth of a Creek on the L. S. a point of high land opposite under which we camped.

15th September Saturday 1804—

Set out early passed the mouth of the Creek, and the mouth of White river. (1) Cap. Lewis and myself went up this river a short distance and crossed, found that this differed very much from the Plat or que courre, threw out but little Sand, about 300 yards wide, the water confined within 150 yards, the current regular & Swift much resembling the Missouri, with Sand bars from the Points, a Sand Island in the mouth, in the point is a butifull Situation for a Town; gradual ascents, and a much greater quantity of timber about the mouth of this river than usual, we concluded to send some distance up this river detached Sj. Gass & R. Fields. We proceeded on passed a small (2) Island covered with Ceeders on [it] I saw great Numbers of Rabits & Grapes, this Island is Small & Separated from a large Sand Is'd at its upper point by a narrow Channel, & is situated nearest the L. Side. Camped on the S. S. opposite the mouth of a large Creek on which there is more timber than is usual on Creeks of this Size, this Creek raised 14 feet the last rains. I killed a Buck Elk & Deer, this evening is very Cold, Great Many Wolves of Different sorts howling about us, the wind is hard from the NW. this evening.

[148]
We Set out verry early & proceed'd on 1½ Miles between Sand bars and Came too on the L. S. (1) determin'd to dry our wet things and liten the boat which we found Could not proceed with the present load [as fast as we desired owing to Sand bars] for this purpose we concluded to detain the Perogue we had intended to send back & load her out of the boat & detain the Soldiers untill Spring & Send them from our Winter quarters. We put out those articles which was wet, Chan'd the boat & perogues, examined all the Lockers Bails &c &c &c.

This Camp is Situated in a butifull Plain Serounded with Timber to the extent of 3½ of a mile in which there is great quantities of fine Plumbs. The two men detach'd up the White river joined us here & informed that the [river] as far as they were up had much the appearance of the Missuorie Som Islands & Sands little Timber, [Em] (much Signs of Beaver, Great many buffalow) & Continud its width, they Saw as well as my self Pine bars & Sticks of Birch in the Drift wood up this river, they Saw also Number of Goats, Such as 1 Killed, also Wolves near the Buffalow, falling Deer, & the Barking Squirils Villages. Cap. Lewis went to hunt & See the Countrey near the Kamp he Killed a Buffalow & a Deer

Cloudy all day. I partly load the empty Perogue out of the Boat. I killed 2 Deer & the party 4 Deer & a Buffalow this we Kill for the Skins to Cover the Perogues, the meat too pore to eat. Cap. Lewis went on an Island above our Camp, this Island is ab: one mile long, with a great perpotion Ceder timber near the middle of it.

I gave out a flannel Shirt to each man, & powder to those who had expended thers.
This morning set out at an early hour, and come too at ½ after 7 A. M. on the Lard. shore 1½ miles above the mouth of a small creek which we named Corvus; in consequence of having killed a beautifull bird of that genus near it, we concluded to ly by at this place the ballance of this day and the next, in order to dry our baggage which was wet by the heavy showers of rain which had fallen within the last three days, and also to lighten the boat by transferring a part of her lading to the red perogue, which we now determined to take on with us to our winter residence wherever that might be; while some of the men were employed in the necessary labour others were dressing of skins washing and mending their cloaths &c. Capt. Clark and myself killed each a buck immediately on landing near our encampment; the deer were very gentle and in great numbers in this bottom which had more timber on it than any part of the river we had seen for many days past, consisting of Cottonwood Elm, some indifferent Ash and a considerable quan[t]ty of a small species of white oak which [was] loaded with acorns of an excellent flavor [having] very little of the bitter roughness of the nuts of most species of oak, the leaf of this oak is small pale green and deeply indented, (not copied for Dr. Barton) it seldom rises higher than thirty feet is much branched, the bark is rough and thick and of a light color; the cup which contains the acorn is fringed on it's edges and embraces the nut about one half; the acorns were now falling, and we concluded that the number of deer which we saw here had been induced thither by the acorns of which they are remarkably fond. almost every species of wild game is fond of the acorn, the Buffaloe Elk, Deer, bear, turkies, ducks, pigians and even the wolves feed on them; we sent three hunters out who soon added eight deer and two Buffalo to our stock of provisions; the Buffaloe

[150]
Pachtüwa-Chia
Der "Erzähler der Visitors"
were so pour that we took only the tongues skins and marrow bones; the skins were particularly acceptable as we were in want of a covering for the large perogue to secure the baggage; the clouds during this day and night prevented my making any observations. Serg'l Gass and Reubin Fields whom we had sent out yesterday to explore the White river return'd at four o'clock this day and reported that they had followed the meanders of that stream about 12 miles, it's general course [is] West, the present or principal channel 150 yards wide; the colour of the water and rapidity and manner of running resembled the Missouri precisely; the country broken on the border of the river about a mile, when the level planes commence and extend as far as the eye can reach on either side; as usual no timber appeared except such as from the steep declivities of hills, or their moist situations, were sheltered from the effects of the fire. these extensive planes had been lately burnt and the grass had sprung up and was about three inches high. vast herds of Buffaloe deer Elk and Antilopes were seen feeding in every direction as far as the eye of the observer could reach.

White River 17th Sep' Plomb Camp.
Course Distance & reference
[Not given.—Ed.]

17th of September Monday 1804 —

Dried all our wet articles, this fine Day, Cap't Lewis went out with a View to See the Country and its productions, he was out all day he killed a Buffalow and a remarkable Bird (Magpy) of the Corvus Species long tail the upper part of the feathers & also the wings is of a purplish varied Green, the back & a part of the wing feathers are white edged with black, white belly, while from the root of the wings to Center of the back is White, the head nake [neck—Ed.] breast & other parts are black the Beeke like a Crow. ab' the Size of a large Pigion. a butifull thing.

[151]
I took equal altitudes and a meridian altitude. Cap' Lewis returned at Dark, Colter killed a Goat like the one I killed and a curious kind of Deer (Mule Deer) of a Dark gray Col'; more so than common, hair long & fine, the ears large & long, a Small receptical under the eyes; like an Elk, the Tail about the length of Common Deer, round (like a Cow) a tuft of black hair about the end, this Spec[i]es of Deer jumps like a goat or Sheep.

8 fallow Deer 5 Common & 3 Buffalo killed to day. Cap' Lewis saw a hare & killed a Rattle snake in a village of B.[arking—Ed.] Squares the wind from S. W. Dryed our provisions, Some of which was much Damaged.

[Lewis:] Monday September 17th, 1804.

Having for many days past confined myself to the boat, I determined to devote this day to amuse myself on shore with my gun and view the interior of the country lying between the river and the Corvus Creek. accordingly before sunrise I set out with six of my best hunters, two of whom I dispatched to the lower side of Corvus creek, two with orders to hunt the bottom and woodland on the river, while I retained two others to accompany me in the intermediate country. one quarter of a mile in rear of our camp which was situated in a fine open grove of cotton wood passed a grove of plumb trees loaded with fruit and now ripe, observed but little difference between this fruit and that of a similar kind common to the Atlantic States. the trees are smaller and more thickly set. this forrest of plumb trees garnish a plain about 20 feet more elivated than that on which we were encamped; this plain extends back about a mile to the foot of the hills one mile distant and to which it is gradually ascending this plane extends with the same breith from the creek below to the distance of near three miles above parallel with the river, and it is entirely occupied by the burrows of the bark[ing] squirrel herefore described; this animat appears here in infinite numbers and the shortness and virdu[r]e of grass gave the
plain the appearance throughout it's whole extent of beatifull bowling-green in fine order. it's aspect is S. E. a great number of wolves of the small kind, hawks [hawks — L.L.] and some pole-cats were to be seen. I presume that those animals feed on this squirrel. found the country in every direction for about three miles intersected with deep revenes and steep irregular hills of 100 to 200 feet high; at the tops of these hills the country breaks of[f] as usual into a fine leavel plain extending as far as the eye can reach. from this plane I had an extensive view of the river below, and the irregular hills which border the opposite sides of the river and creek. the surrounding country had been birnt about a month before and young grass had now sprung up to hight of 4 Inches presenting the live green of the spring to the West a high range of hills, stretch across the country from N. to S. and appeared distant about 20 miles; they are not very extensive as I could plainly observe their rise and termination no rock appeared on them and the sides were covered with virdu[r]e similar to that of the plains this senery already rich pleasing and beatiful was still farther hightened by immense herds of Buffaloe, deer Elk and Antelopes which we saw in every direction feeding on the hills and plains. I do not think I exaggerate when I estimate the number of Buffaloe which could be compre[end]ed at one view to amount to 3000. my object was if possible to kill a female Antelope having already procured a male; I pursued my rout on this plain to the west. flanked by my two hunters untill eight in the morning when I made the signal for them to come to me which they did shortly after. we rested our selves about half an hour, and regaled ourselves on half a bisquit each and some jirks of Elk which we had taken the precaution to put in our pouches in the morning before we set out, and drank of the water of a small pool which had collected on this plain from the rains which had fallen some days before. we had now after various windings in pursuit of several herds of antelopes which we had seen on our way made the distance of about eight miles from our camp. we found the Antelope extreemly shy and watchfull insomuch that we had been unable to get a shot at them; when at rest
they generally select the most elivated point in the neighborhood, and as they are watchful and extremely quick of sight and their sense of smelling very acute it is almost impossible to approach them within gunshot; in short they will frequently discover and flee from you at the distance of three miles. I had this day an opportunity of witnessing the agility and the superior fleetness of this animal which was to me really astonishing. I had pursued and twice surprised a small herd of seven; in the first instance they did not discover me distinctly and therefore did not run at full speed, tho' they took care before they rested to gain an elivated point where it was impossible to approach them under cover, except in one direction and that happened to be in the direction from which the wind blew towards them; bad as the chance to approach them was, I made the best of my way towards them, frequently peeping over the ridge with which I took care to conceal myself from their view the male, of which there was but one, frequently incircled the summit of the hill on which the females stood in a group, as if to look out for the approach of danger. I got within about 200 paces of them when they smelt me and fled; I gained the top of the eminence on which they stood, as soon as possible from whence I had an extensive view of the country the antelopes which had disappeared in a steep revenee now appeared at the distance of about three miles on the side of a ridge which passed obliquely across me and extended about four miles, so soon had these antelopes gained the distance at which they had again appeared to my view I doubted at first that they were the same that I had just surprised, but my doubts soon vanished when I beheld the rapidity of their flight along the ridge before me it appeared rather the rapid flight of birds than the motion of quadrupeds. I think I can safely venture the assertion that the speed of this animal is equal if not superior to that of the finest blooded courser. this morning I saw.

1 The sentence remains unfinished. At the bottom of the page is a memorandum: "This a part of No. 2." — Ed.
### Course Distance & references 18th Sept.

| N. | 45° E. | 1 Mile to the lower p't of an Island (1) |
| N. | 25° E. | 2 Miles to a p't on the L. S. passed the Isk at one mile and some Sand bars making from it, a Creek on the S. S. opp' the upper point. |
| N. | 14° E. | 1 1/2 Miles to a p't of Willows on the L. Side. |
| N. | 10° W. | 1 1/2 Miles to a point of wood on the L. S. |
| N. | 22° W. | 1 Mile to a p't on the L. S. and the upper part of the timber. |

---

September 18: Tuesday 18:4

Wind from the N W. we set out early the boat much lightened, the wind a head proceed on very Slowly (1) Passed an Island about the middle of the river at 1 Mile, this Island is about a mile long, and has a great perpeton of red Ceders on it, a Small Creek comes in on the S. S. opposit the head of the Island, proceeded on passed many Sand bars and Camped on the L. S. before night the wind being very hard & a head all Day, the hunters killed 10 Deer to day and a Prairie wolf, had it all juked & Skins Stretch' after Camp.

I walked on Shore saw Goats, Elk, Buffalow, Black tail Deer, & the Common Deer, I killed a Prairie Wolf, about the Size of a gray fox bushy tail head & ears like a Wolf, Some fur Burrows in the ground and barks like a Small Dog.

What has been taken heretofore for the Fox was those Wolves, and no Foxes has been Seen; The large Wolves are very numorous, they are of a light col' large & has long hair with Coarse fur. |

Some Goats of a Different Kind wer Seen yesterday great many Porcupin rabbits & Barking Squirils in this quarter. Plumbs & grapes.

---

1. On this island was the old site of Fort Recovery; on the west bank of the river was Fort Cedar (now Cedars), a post of the Missouri Fur Company. — Coute (L. and C., i. p. 123).

2. The prairie wolf, or coyote (Canis latrans), and the great gray Western wolf (C. lupus occidentalis); the latter was wont to prowl about buffalo herds. — Ed.
Course Distance & references Sept. 19th

N. 5° W. 3 Miles to a p' of wood on the S. S. oppos is a Bluff on the L. S. (1)

North

4 Miles to the Lower p' of prospect Island opps the 3 rivers on the S. S. (2)

N. 32° W. 24 Miles to the Upper p' of the Island ps the rivers. (2)

N. 43° W. 2 Miles on the L. S. pass'd a Creek. (3)

N. 54° W. 3 Miles to a p' on the S. S.

N. 70° W. 5 Miles to a Bluff on the L. S. pass'd a Creek. (4)

West

3 1/2 Miles to a timber on the L. S. pass'd a Creek. (5)

N. 59° W. 3 1/4 Miles to the Upper p' of an Island at the Commencem't of the Big bend. (6)

19th of September Wednesday 1804—

Set out early, a cool morning very clear the wind from the S. E. A Bluff on the L. S. here commences a Butifull Country on both Sides of the Missourie. (2) passed a large Island called Prospect Island oppos the 3 rivers Cons in, passing thro a butifull Plain, here I walked on Shore & Killed a fat Cow & Sent her to the boat and proceeded on to the first of the 3 rivers, this river is about 35 yards wide contains a good deal of water, I walked up this river 2 miles & cross, the bottom is high and rich Some timber, I crossed & returned to the mouth, & proceeded up one mile to the 2nd river which is Small 12 yards wide, and on it but little timber, on this Creek the Sioux has frequently Camped, as appears by the Signs, the lands between those two Creeks is a perpendicular bluff of about 50 feet with a butifull Plain & gentle assent back. A Short distance above the 2nd a 3rd Creek Comes into the river in 3 places scattering its waters over the large timbered bottom, this Creek is near the Size of the Middle Creek Containing a greater quantity of water, those rivers is the place that all nations who meet are at peace with each other, called the Sioux pass of the 3 rivers.¹

¹ Thus named, as the Sioux generally cross the Missouri at this place. These streams have the same right of asylum, though in a less degree than Pipestone Creek already mentioned."—Bennet (p. 76).

The present names of these streams are (in ascending order) Crow, Wolf, and
The boat proceeded on pass the Island (3) passed a Creek 15 yds. Wide on the L. Side (4) passed a Creek on the L. S. 20 yards wide which I call Elm Creek passing thro' a high Plain (5) passed a Creek on the L. S. 18 yds. above which the boat Came too, I joined them late at night, and Call this Creek Night Creek the wind favourable all Day, I killed a fat buck Elk late and could only get his Skin and a Small part of his flesh to Camp. My Servent Killed a Buck, the Crew in the boat Killed 2 buffalo in the river. The Hunters on Shore Killed 4 Deer with black tails one of which was a Buck with two main Prongs on each Side forked equally, which I never before Seen. I saw Several large gangs of Buffalo 2 large Herds of Elk & goats &c. (6) pass a Small Island on the S. S. opposit to this Island on the L. S. a Creek of about 10 yards wide Coms in passing thro' a plain in which great quantites of the Prickley Pear grows, I call this Creek Prickley Pear Creek, this Isl. is called the lower Island it is Situated at the Commencement of what is Called & Known by the Grand de Tortu [Detour] or Big Bend of the Missouri.

Course Distance and references — 20th Sept. (Big Bend)

From the lower Islands upper p
North 4 M to a p on the L. S. Passed one on the S. S. above the Island about one & 1/2 M?
N. 10° W. 1 1/2 M on the L. Side
N. 22° W. 3 M on the L. Side p! a s! b!
N. 60° W 2 M on the L. Side.
West 3 M on the L. S.
S. 73° W. 3 1/2 M on the L. Side
South 4 M on the L. S. passed a Small Island on the L. S. a Small run ops! S. S. (1)
S. 74° E. 3 1/2 M to a p! of wood on the L. S. Camped (2)
S. 56° E. 3 1/2 M to a p! on the S. S. ops! a high hill (3)
S. 28° E. 2 M to a Ceder Valey in a bend on the L. S. at this place the gorge is 2000 yds.

Campbell creeks. The first named is the location of Crow Creek Indian Agency and Fort Thompson. — Ed.
20th of September, Thursday 1804 —

a fair morning wind from the S. E. detached 2 men to the 1st Creek above the big bend with the horse to hunt and wait our arrival proceeded on passed the lower Island opposit which the Sand bars are very thick & the water Shoal. I walked on Shore with a view of examening this bend crossed at the Narost part which is a high irregular hills of about 180 or 190 feet, this place the gouge of the bend is 1 Mile & a quarter (from river to river or across,) from this high land which is only in the Gouge, the bend is a Butifull Plain thro which I walked, Saw numbers of Buffalow & Goats, I saw a Hare & believe he run into a hole in the Side of a hill, he run up this hill which is Small & has several holes on the Side & I could not see him after, I joined the boat in the evening, passed a Small Island on the L. S. in the N. W. extremity of the bend Called Solitary Island, and Camped late on a Sand Bar near the S. S. R. Fields Killed 1 Deer & 2 Goats one of them a female. She Differs from the Mail as to Size being Smaller, with Small Horns, Streqht with a Small Prong without any black about the Neck. None of those Goats has any Beard, they are all Keenly made [delicately formed. — BIDDLE], and is butifull.

Course Distance and ref'd — 21st Sep'

S. 70° W. 4½ Miles to the Upper part of a Ceder bottom on the L. S. passed Several Sand bars on both Sides.

N. 50° W. 2½ Miles to a tree on the S. S. passing over a Willow Island & a Creek on the L. S. (1)

West 4½ Miles to a point of Timber on the L. S. Passed Sand bars the river here is very Shoal and about a Mile Wide. (2) Passed large hard Stone on the Shore on each Side, a Mock Island on the S. S.

21st of September Friday 1804 —

at half past one o'clock this morning the Sand bar on which we Camped began to under mind and give way which allarmed the Serjeant on Guard, the motion of the boat awakened me; I got up & by the light of the moon observed that the Sand
had given away both above and below our Camp & was falling in fast. I ordered all hands on as quick as possible & pushed off, we had pushed off but a few minits before the bank under which the Boat & perogus lay give way, which would Certainly have Sunk both Perogues, by the time we made the ops’ Shore our Camp fell in, we made a 2d Camp for the remainder of the night. & at Daylight proceeded on to the Gouge of this Great bend and Brackfast, we Sent a man to Measure (step off) the Distance across the gouge, he made it 2,000 yd’s. The distance arround is 30 M’. The hills extend thro’ the Gouge and is about 200 foot above the water. in the bend as also the opposit Sides both above and below the bend is a butifull inclined Plain, in which there is great numbers of Buffalow, Elk & Goats in view feeding & scipping on those Plains Grouse, Larks & the Prairie bird is Common in those Plains.

We proceeded on passed a (1) Willow Island below the mouth of a Small river called Tylors R about 35 Yd’s wide which Coms in on the L. S. 6 Miles above the Gouge of the bend, at the Mouth of this river the two hunters a head left a Deer & its Skin also the Skin of a White wolf. We observe an emence number of Plover of Different kind collecting and taking their flight Southerly, also Brants, which appear to move in the Same Direction. The Cat fish is Small and not so plenty as below.

(2) The Shore on each Side is lined with hard rough Gulley Stone of different Sises, which has rolled from the hills & out of Small brooks, Cedar is Common here. This day is warm, the wind which is not hard blows from the S. E., we Camped at the lower point of the Mock Island on the S. S. this now Connected with the main land, it has the appearance of once being an Island detached from the main land Covered with tall Cotton Wood. We Saw Some Camps and tracks of the Seaux which appears to be old, three or four weeks ago, one french-man I fear has got an abscess on his they [thigh — Ed.], he Complains very much we are making every exertion to reliev him.

The Praries in this quarter Contains great q’t of Prickley Pear.
Course Distance & references — 22nd

S. 72° W. 5 Miles to a point on the S. S. Passing under a high bluff on the L. Side (1)

West 1 Mile on the S. S. a bottom commencing on the L. S. at the end of this Course

N. 38° W. 4 1/2 Miles to a p' of timber on the S. S. opposit the Lower p' of Ceder Island passed two Islands on the L. S. one 1/2 a Mile & the other 3 Miles long called the 3 Sisters ops' a large Creek coms in (2)

N. 35° W. 3 Miles to a p' on S. S. passed Ceder Island Situated nearest the S. S. a trading house (3)

N. 22° E. 21/16 Miles to a timber opposit the Lower (L. S.) p', of a Small Island called Goat Island. (4)

a thick fog this morning detained us untill 7 oClock passed a butifull inclined Prairie on both Sides in which we See great numbers of Buffalow feeding. (1) took the Meridean altitude of the Suns Upper Limb 92°. 50' 00". [with] the Sextent the Lat' produced from this Observation is 44° 11' 33" 3 10 North.

(2) passed a Small Island on the L. S. imediately above passed a Island Situated nearest the L. S. ab' 3 Miles long, behind this Is' on the L. S. a Creek Coms in about 15 yards wide, this Creek and Island are Called the 3 Sisters, a butifull Plain on both Sides of the river.

(3) passed a Island Situated nearest the S. S. imediately above the last Called Ceder Island this Island is about 1 1/2 miles long & nearly as wide Covered with Ceder, on the South Side of this Island Mr. Louiselle a trader from S' Louis built a fort of Ceder & a good house to trade with the Saux & Wintered last winter; about this fort I observed a number of Indian Camps in a Conceal form. they fed their horses on Cotton limbs as appears. here our hunters us joined having

1 Gass (p. 58) thus describes this post: "The space picketed in is about 65 or 70 feet square, with sentry-boxes in two of the angles. The pickets are 12' 2" feet above ground. In this square he built a house 45' 2" by 52' 1/2 feet, and divided it into four equal parts, one for goods, one to trade in, one to be used as a common hall, and the other for a family-house." — Ed.

[160]
killed 2 Deer & a Beaver, they Complain much of the Mineral Substances in the barren hills over which they passed Distroying their mockessons.

(4) we proceeded on and Camp'd late on the S. Side below a Small Island in the bend S. S. Called Goat Island, The large Stones which lay on the Sides of the banks in Several places lay some distance in the river, under the water and is dangerous, &c.

I walked out this evening and killed a fine Deer the Musquitoes is very troublesome in the bottoms.

Course Distance & references. — 23° Sept

N. 46° W. 3½ Miles to the Mouth of a Creek in the bend to the S. S. passed an Isl on the S. S. (1) & Sands.
S. 46° 13½ Miles to a Coaps of Wood at a Spring in a bend to the L. S.
N. 80° W. 4½ Miles to the lower p' of a large Island (2) passed 2 Willow Islands & Several Bars.
N. 85° W. 5 Miles to a p' on the L. S. pass upper p of Elk Island at 2½ Miles. Several Sands
West 5 Miles to a p' on the S. S. below a Creek on the L. S.

23° of September Sunday 1804 —

Set out under a gentle breeze from the S. E. (1) passed a Small Island Situated in a bend to the L. S. Called Goat Island, A Short distance above the upper point a Creek of 12 yards wide Coms in on the S. S. we observed a great Smoke to the S. W. I walked on Shore & observed Buffalow in great Herds at a distance

(2) passed two Small Willow Islands with large Sand bars makeing out from them, passed (2) Elk Island about 2½ Miles long & 3½ Mile Wide Situated near the L. S. Covered with Cotton Wood the read Currents Called by the french Gres de Beuf & grapes &c. &c.

[Memoranda by Clark on the inside of front cover and fly-leaf of Codex C:]
The Mandans call a red berry common to the upper part of the Missouri &c. The red Berry is called by the Rees Nat-nis the engages call the same Berry Grease de Buff — grows in great abundance & makes a Delightfull Tart.
the river is nearly straight for a great distance wide and Shoal passed a Creek on the S. S. 16 yards wide we Call Reuben Creek,\(^1\) as R. Fields found it. Camped on the S. S. below the mouth of a Creek on the L. S. three Souex boys Came to us Swam the river and inform\(^1\) that the Band of Seaux called the Tetongues (Titons) of 80 Lodges were Camped at the next Creek above, & 60 Lodges more a Short distance above, we gave those boys two Carrots of Tobacco to Carry to their Chiefs, with directions to tell them that we would Speak to them tomorrow.

Cap\(^1\) Lewis walked on Shore this evening, R. F. Killed a Doe Goat,

Course Distance & Reference — 24\(^{th}\) Sept,

| N. 85 W. 3 | Miles a p' on the S. S. |
| West 2\(\frac{1}{2}\) | Miles to the S. S. right of a Isl! Situated on the L. S. (1) |
| West 4 | Miles to a Point on the S. S. passed the Island on the L. S. |
| S. 85 W. 4 | Miles to the Mouth of a River Called by Evens\(^2\) Little Missouri I call it the Teton river as the Teton Bands of the Soux reside on it (2) |

24\(^{th}\) September Monday 1804 —

Set out early a fair day the wind from the E. pass the mouth of Creek on the L. S. Called Creek on high Water, (High Water) passed (1) a large Island on the L. S. about 2 Miles & 1/2 long on which Colter had Camped & Killed 4 Elk, the wind fair from the S. E. we prepared Some Clothes and a few Meadels for the Chiefs of the Teton’s bands of Seoux which we expect to See to day at the next river, observe a great Deel of Stone on the Sides of the hills on the S. S. we Saw one Hare, to day, prepared all things for

---

\(^1\) Now East Medicine Knoll River (a translation of its Indian name); across the Missouri here was the site of old Fort George. — Coues (L. and C., i, p. 124).

\(^2\) Probably referring to a map cited by Coues (L. and C., i, p. xxix), as made by one Evans in 1804, showing the Missouri River to the Mandans. See our atlas volume, for maps which Lewis and Clark both took with them and made upon the Expedition; one of the former was probably a copy of the Evans map. — Ed.
Action in Case of necessity, our Perogus went to the Island for the Meet, Soon after the man on Shore run up the bank and reported that the Indians had Stolen the horse. We Soon after Met 5 Ind's and ankered out Som distance & Spoke to them informed them we were friends, & Wished to Continue So but were not afraid of any Indians. Some of their young men had taken the horse Sent by their Great father for their Cheif and we would not Speek to them untill the horse was returned to us again.

passed (2) a Island on the S. S. on which we Saw Several Elk, about 1½ Miles long Called Good hamered [known] Isl. Came to about 1½ Miles above off the Mouth of a Small river about 70 yards wide Called by Mr. Evens the Little Mississou [Missouri] River, The Tribes of the Seunex Called the Teton, is Camped about 2 Miles up on the N. W. Side, and we Shall Call the River after that Nation, Teton1

This river is 70 yards wide at the mouth of Water, and has a considerable Current we ankered off the mouth

the french Perogue Come up early in the day, the other did not Get up untill in the evening Soon after we had Come too. I went & Smoked with the Chiefs who came to See us here all well, we prepare to Speek with the Indians tomorrow at which time we are informed the Indians will be here, the French Man who had for Some time been Sick, began to blead which allowed him 2/3 of our party Camped on board the remainder with the Guard on Shore.

1 Also known as Bad River. Near its mouth was Fort Pierre (begun in 1831), named for Pierre Chouteau. — Ed.
Chapter IV

From Teton River to the Mandans

Clark's Journal and Orders, September 25—October 26, 1804
Order by Lewis, October 15

[Clark]

A fair morning the wind from the S. E., all well, raised a flag staff & made a morning or shade on a sand bar in the mouth of Teton River, for the purpose of speaking with the Indians under, the boat crew on board at 70 yards distance from the bar. The 5 Indians which we met last night continued, about 11 o'clock the 1st & 2nd Chief came we gave them some of our provisions to eat, they gave us great quantities of meet some of which was spoiled. We feel much at a loss for the want of an interpreter the one we have can speak but little.

Met in council at 12 o'clock and after smoking, agreeable to the usual custom, Cap. Lewis proceeded to deliver a speech which we were obliged to curtail for want of a good interpreter. All our party paraded. Gave a medal to the grand chief Callic in Indian Un ton gar Sar bar in French Beffe nare [Beuffle noir] black buffalo. Said to be a good man, 2nd chief Torto hon gar or the Parti sin or partizan had the 3rd is the Beffe De Medison [Beufle de Medecine] his name is Tar ton gar Wa ker 1st [Beufle de Medecine] considerable man, War xing go. 2nd considerable man, second bear — Mato co que par.

Invited those chiefs on board to show them our boat and such curiosities as was strange to them, we gave them 14 a glass of whiskey which they appeared to be very fond of. Sucked the bottle after it was out & soon began to be troublesome, one the 2nd chief assuming drunkenness, as a cloak for his rascally intentions I went with those chiefs in one of the
Perogues with 5 men 3 & 2 Ind) (which left the boat with great reluctance) to Shore with a view of reconciling those men to us, as Soon as I landed the Perogue three of their young Men Seased the Cable of the Perogue, (in which we had presents &c) the Chiefs Sold' [each Chief has a soldier] Hugged the mast, and the 2d Chief was very insolent both in words & justures (pretended Drunkenness & staggered up against me) declaring I should not go on, Stating he had not receved presents sufficent from us, his justures were of Such a personal nature I felt My self Compeled to Draw my Sword (and Made a Signal to the boat to prepare for action) at this Motion Cap' Lewis ordered all under arms in the boat, those with me also Showed a Disposition to Defend themselves and me, the grand Chief then took hold of the rope & ordered the young Warrers away, I felt My Self warm & Spoke in very positive terms.

Most of the Warrers appeared to have ther Bows strung and took out their arrows from the quiver. as 1 (being surrounded) was not permitted (by them) to return, I Sent all the men except 2 Imp' [Interpreters] to the boat, the perogue Soon returned with about 12 of our determined men ready for any event, this movement caused a mo: of the Indians to with-draw at a distance, leaving their chiefs & soldiers alone with me. Their treatment to me was very rough & I think justified roughness on my part, they all lift my Perogue, and Council with themselves the result I could not lern and nearly all went off after remaining in this Situation Some time I offered my hand to the 1. & 2. Chiefs who refus' to receive it. I turned off & went with my men on board the perogue, I had not prost more the [than] 10 paces before the 1st Chief' 3d & 2 Brave Men Waded in after me. I took them in & went on board 1

We proceeded on about 1 Mile & anchored out off a Willow Island placed a guard on Shore to protect the Cooks & a guard in the boat, fastened the Perogues to the boat, I call this Island had humered Island as we were in a bad humer.

---

1 This paragraph is misplaced in the MS.; it is written on the next page after that containing the first part of this council with the Indians. We have placed it in proper position. — Ed.
Course Distance & references — 26th Sept 1804 bad

N. 28 W. 4½ Miles to a p't on the L. S. passing a Small Willow Island at 1½ Miles & Several Sand bars the Water Shallow came too (1)

26 of September Wednesday 1804 —

Set out early proceeded on and Came to by the Wish of the Chiefs for to let their Squars [squaws] & boys see the Boat and Suffer them to treat us well great numbers of men womin & children on the banks viewing us, these people Shew great anxiety, they appear Spritely, Generally ill looking & not well made their legs [ & arms] Small generally, [high cheek bones, prominent eyes] they Grese & Black [paint] themselves [with coal] when they dress [the distinguished men] make use of a hawks feathers [Calumet feather adorned with porcupine quills & fastened to the top of the head & falls backwards] about their heads. the men [wear] a robe & each a polecats Skin, for to hold ther Bois roule [Bois roule] for Smoking,¹ fond of Dress & Show badly armed with fusees, &c. The Squaws are Cheerfull fine look'g womin not handsom, High Cheeks Dressed in Skins a Peticoat and roab which foldes back over ther Sholder, with long wool, do all their laborious work & I may Say perfect Slaves to the Men, as all Squars of Nations much at War, or where the Womin are more noumerous than the men.² after Comeing too Cap! Lewis & 5 men went on Shore with the Cheifs, who appeared disposed to make up & be friendly, after Captain Lewis had been on Shore about 3 hours I became uneasy for fear of Deception & Sent a Serjeant to See him and know his treatment which he reported was friendly, & they were preparing for a Dance this evening. The[y] made frequent Solicitations for us to remain one night only and let them Show their good

¹ Bois roule, literally "rolled wood," — better known by its Algonkin name, Kinnikinik (Kinnikinnick), — a mixture of tobacco with scrapings or shavings from various woods, especially that of sumac, red osier, and other dogwoods, and bearberry. — Ed.

² Biddle describes in much greater detail (ib. pp. 84-90) the costumes and mode of life of these Teton Indians. — Ed.
DIÀNDEH PÀNGHU
MÄNDEH PÅHČHU [A young Shoshone Indian]
disposition towards us, we determin'd to remain, after the return of Cap' Lewis, I went on Shore on landing I was receiv'd on a elegant painted B-[buffalo] Robe & taken to the Village by 6 Men & was not permitted to touch the ground untill I was put down in the grand Concill house on a White dressed Robe. I saw Several Maha Prissners and Spoke to the Chiefs [telling them that — Ed.] it was necessary to give those prisoners up & become good friends with the Mahas if they wished to follow the advice of their great father. I was in Several Lodges neatly formed as before mentioned as to the Baurely (Bœuf brûlé — Yankton) Tribe. I was met (on landing from the boat) by about 10 Well Dress'd young Men who took me up in a roabe Highly adeocrated and Set me Down by the Side of their Chief on a Dressed Robe in a large Council House, this house formed a 6 Circle of Skins Well Dressed and Sown together under this Shelter about 70 Men Set forming a Circle in front of the Cheifs a plac of 6 feet Diameter was Clear and the pipe of peace raised on (forkd) Sticks (about 6 or 8 inches from the ground) under which there was swans down scattered, on each Side of this Circle two Pipes, the (two) flags of Spain 2 & the Flag we gave them in front of the Grand Chief a large fire was near in which provisions were Cooking, in the Center about 400 of excellent Buffalo Beef as a present for us. Soon after they Set me Down, the Men went for Cap' Lewis brought him in the same way and placed him also by the Chief in a few minits an old man rose & Spoke aproving what we had done & informing us of their situation requesting us to take pity on them & which was answered. The great Chief then rose with great State [speaking — Ed.] to the Same purpose as far as we Could learn & then with Great Solemnity took up the pipe of Peace & after pointing it to the heavins the 4 quarters of the Globe & the earth, he made Some dissertation, (then made a Speech) lit it and presented the Stem to us to Smoke; when the Principal Chief Spoke with the Pipe of Peace he took in one hand some of the most Delicate parts of the Dog which was prepared for the fiest & made a Sacrifice to the flag. [this sentence misplaced in MS., but properly placed by us. — Ed.]
after A Smoke had taken place, & a Short Harange to his people, we were requested to take the Meal (& then put before as the dog which they had been cooking, & Pemitigon & ground potatoe in several platters. Pem: is Buff meat dried or jerked pounded & mixed with grease raw. Dog Sioux think great dish used on festivals eat little of dog—pem: & por' good.) We Smoked for an hour (till) Dark & all was Cleared away a large fire made in the Center, about 10 Musitions playing on tambereens (made of hoops & Skin stretched), long Sticks with Deer & Goats Hoofs tied so as to make a gingleing noise, and many others of a Similer Kind, those Men began to Sing, & Beet on the Tamboren, the Women Came toward highly Deckerated in their Way, with the Scalps and Tropies of War of their fathers Husbands Brothers or near Connections & proceeded to Dance the War Dance (Women only dance jump up & down—five or six young men selected accompanied with songs the tamborin making the song extemore words & music every now & then one of the cow' come out & repeat some exploit in a sort of song—this taken up by the young men and the women dance to it) which they done with great Chearfullness untill about 12 oClock when we informed the Cheifs that they were [must be] fatigued [amazing us] &c. they then retired & we Accomp' by 4 Cheifs returned to our boat, they Stayed with us all night. Those people have Some brave men which they make use of as Soldiers those men attend to the police of the Village Correct all errors I saw one of them to day whip 2 Squars, who appeared to have fallen out, when he approach'd all about appeared to flee with great turrow [terror], at night they keep two 3, 4 5 men at different Distances walking around Camp Singing the accurrances of the night.

All the Men on board 100 paces from Shore Wind from the S. E. moderate one man verry sick on board with a Dangerass Abscess on his Hip. All in Spirits this evening.

In this Tribe I saw 25 Squars & Boys taken 13 days ago in a battle with the Mahars in this battle they Destroy'd 40 Lodges, Killed 75 Men, & som boys & Children, & took 48

---

1 Better known as "pemmican." — Ed.
Prisoners Womin & boys which they promis both Cap' Lewis and my self Shall be Delivered up to Mr. Durion at the Bous rule (Bois bruë) Tribe, those are a retched and Dejected looking people the Squars appear low & Corse but this is an unfavourable time to judge of them.

We gave our Mahar intep' some few articles to give those Squars in his name Such as Alls, needles &c. &c. I saw & eat Penmitigon the Dog, Grou potatoe made into a Kind of homney, which I thought but little inferior. I also Saw a Spoon Made of a horn of an Animell of the Sheep Kind (the mountain ram of Argalia) the Spoon will hold 2 quarts.

2d of Sept. Thursday 1804

I rose early after a bad nights Sleep found the Chief[s] all up, and the bank as usual lined with Spectators we gave the 2 great Cheifs a Blanket a peace, or rether they took off agreeable to their Custom the one they lay on and each one Peck of corn. after Brackfast Cap' Lewis & the Cheifs went on Shore, as a very large part of their nation was coming in, the Disposition of whom I did not know one of us being sufficient on Shore, I wrote a letter to Mr. P. Durion & prepared a meadel & Some Coins° (Certificates) & Sent to Cap Lewis at 2 oClock Cap' Lewis Returned with 4 Cheifs & a Brave Man (Consid' Man) named War cha pa or on his Guard when the friends of those people [the Scioux] die they run arrows through their flesh above and below their elbows as a testimony of their Great.

after Staying about half an hour, I went with them on Shore, Those men left the boat with reluctance, I went first to the 2d Cheifs Lodge, where a crowd came around after Speaking on various Subjects I went to a principal mans lodge from them to the grand Cheifs lodge, after a few minits he invited me to a Lodge within the Circle in which I Stayed with all their principal Men untill the Dance began, which was Similer to the one of last night performed by their women with poles

---

1 One of the bands of the Teton Sioux. — Ed.
2 The Rocky Mountain sheep or argal (Ovis montana.) — Ed.
(in their hands) on which Scalps of their enemies were hung, Some with the Guns Spears & War empliments of (taken by) their husbands [\&c.] in their hands.

Cap't Lewis Came on Shore and we Continued untill we were Sleepy & returned to our boat, the 2nd Chief & one principal Man accompanied us, Those two Indians accompanied me on board in the Small Perogue; Cap't Lewis with a guard Still on Shore the man who Steered not being much accustomed to Steer, passed the bow of the boat & the peroge Came broad Side against the Cable & broke it which obliged me to order in a loud voice all hands up & at their oars, my preemptry order to the men and the bustle of their getting to their ores allarm'd the Cheifs, together with the appearance of the Men on Shore, as the boat turn'd 'The Chief' hollowed & allarm'd the Camp or Town informing them that the Mahars was about attacking us (them). In about 10 minits the bank was lined with men armed the 1st Chief at their head, about 200 men appeared and after about ¼ hour returned all but about 60 men who continued on the bank all night, the Cheifs Cont'd all night with us. This allarm I as well as Cap't Lewis Considered as the Signal of their intentions (which was to Stop our proceeding on our journey and if Possible rob us) we were on our Guard all night, the misfortune of the loss of our Anchor obliged us to Lay under a falling bank much expos'd to the accomplishment of their hostile intentions. P. C. our Bowman who & Speek Mahar informed us in the night that the Maha Prisoners informed him we were to be Stoped. we Shew as little Sighns of a Knowledge of their intentions as possible all prepared on board for any thing which might hapen, we kept a Strong guard all night in the boat, no Sleep

25th of September 1804 Friday

Made many attempts in different ways to find our anchor, but Could not, the Sand had Covered it, from the Misfortune of last night our boat was laying at Shore in a verry unfavourable Situation, after finding that the anchor Could not be found we deturmined to proceed on, with great difficulty got
the Chiefs out of our boat, and when we was about Setting out the Class Called the Soldiers took possession of the Cable the 1st Chief which was Still on board, & intended to go a Short distance up with us. I told him the men of his nation Set on the Cable, he went out & told Cap' Lewis who was at the bow the men Who Set on the roap was Soldiers, and wanted Tobacco Cap' L. [said] would not agree to be forced into any thing, the 2d Chief Demanded a flag & Tobacco which we retus'd to Give Stateing proper reasons to them for it after much Difficulty—which had nearly reduced us to necessity to hostilites I threw a Carrot of Tobacco to 1st Chief took the port fire from the gunner. Spoke so as to touch his pride. The Chief gave the Tobacco to his Soldiers & he jurked the rope from them and handed it to the bowsman we then Set out under a Breeze from the S. E. about 2 miles up we observed the 3rd Chief on Shore beckining to us we took him on board he informed us the roap was held by the order of the 2d Chief who was a Double Spoken man. Soon after we Saw a man Coming full Speed, thro' the plains left his horse & proceeded across a Sand bar near the Shore we took him on board & observed that he was the Son of the Chief we had on board we Sent by him a talk to the nation Stateing [stating] the cause of our hoisting the red flag und' the white, if they were for peace Stay at home & do as we had Directed them, if the[y] were for war or were Determined to stop us we were ready to defend our Selves, we halted one hour & 1/2 on the S. S. & made a Substitute of Stones for a ancher, refreshed our men and proceeded on about 2 Miles higher up & Came to a verry Small Sand bar in the middle of the river & Stayed all night, I am verry unwell for want of Sleep Determined to Sleep to night if possible, the Men Cooked & we rested well.

Course Distance & ref

N. 33 W. 3 Miles to the extmt of a Sand bar on the L. S. passed a Willow Isl' on the L. S. at the Coms' of the Course.
S. 85° W. 3 Mts to an object on the bank in a bend to the S. S. at 6 Some woods, op's the High land on the L. S. Camped. [171]
Set out early. Some bad Sand bars, proceeded on at 9 oClock we observed the 2\(^2\) Chief & 2 principal Men one Man & a Squar on Shore, they wished to go up with us as far as the other part of their band, which they said was on the river a head not far Distant we refused Stateing verry Sufficint reasons and was Plain with them on the Subject, they were not please observed that they would walk on Shore to the Place we intended to Camp to night, we observed it was not our wish that they Should for if they did we Could not take them or any other Tetons on board except the one we had now with us who might go on Shore whenever he pleased, they proceeded on, the Chief on board ask\(^1\) for a twist\(^1\) of Tobacco for those men we gave him 1/2 of a twist, and Sent one by them for that part of their band which we did not See, & Continued on Saw great numbers of Elk at the mouth of a Small Creek Called No timber C — as no timber appeared to be on it above the mouth of this Creek (a Ricara band of) the Paniess had a Village 5 years ago, (no remains but the mound which surrounded the town.) The 2\(^2\) Chief came on the Sand bar & requested we would put him across the river, I Sent a Perogue & Crossed him & one Man to the S. S. and proceeded on & Came too on a Sand bar on about 3/4 Mile from the main Shore & put on it 2 Sentinals Continud all night at anchor (we Substitute large Stones for anchors in place of the one we lost all in high Spirits &c.)

Course Distance & reference — 29 Sept

S. 60° W. 2 Mites to a p' on S. S. Passing Several Sand bars.
N. 80° E. 2 1/4 to a tree on L. S.
N. 16° E. 2 1/2 to a p' on S. S.
N. 8° W. 1 3/4 to the Mouth of a Creek on the L. S. Where the Panis had a Town.
N. 45° E. 2 Mites to a p' on the L. Side
N. 25° E. 1 2/3 Miles to the Lower p' of a Willow Island\(^2\) in the middle of the river.

\(^1\) The same as the "carrot" mentioned elsewhere. — Ed.
\(^2\) Now Okobojon. — Ed.

[172]
TETON TO MANDANS

Course Distance & reference — 30th Sept.

N. 30° W. 3 Miles to a tree at the upper p' of some woods on the S. S.
N. 80° W. 1½ Miles on the S. S.
N. 64° W. 3 Miles to a Bush on L. S.
N. 46° W. 1½ Miles on the L. S.
N. 10° W. 3 Miles to a p' on the S. S. passed Several Sand bars & the Camp of a Band of Tetons (1)
N. North 2 Miles to a tree on the S. S.
N. 24° W. 4 Miles to a p' on the L. S.
N. 50° W. 2½ Miles to the Lower p' of Pania Island, situated in the 2° mid' of the river (2)

30th of Sept. Sunday 1804 —

Set out this morning early had not proceeded on far before we discovered an Ind running after us, he came up with us at 7 oClock & requested to come on board and go up to the Recorees (2) we refused to take any of that band on board if he chose to proceed on Shore it was very well. Soon after I discovered on the hills at a great distance great numbers of Indians which appeared to be makeing to the river above us, we proceeded on under a Double reeled sail, & some rain at 9 oClock observed a large band of Indians the Same which I had before seen on the hills incamping on the bank the L. S. we Came too on a Sand bar Brackfast & proceeded on & Cast the anchor opposit their Lodge at about 100 yards distant, and informed the Indians which we found to be a part of the Band we had before Seen, that (we) took them by the hand and Sent to each Chief a Carrot of tobacco, as we had been treated badly by some of the band below, after Staying 2 days for them, we Could not delay any time, & referred them to Mr. Durion for a full account of us and to here our Talk Sent by him to the Tetons, those were very solicitious for us to land and eate with them, that they were friendly &c. &c. we ap-

1 Now Cheyenne. — Ed.
2 Otherwise called Rickree, Ree, or, more correctly, Arikara; Lewis says (in Statistical View, p. 23) that they are "the remains of ten large tribes of Panias (Pawnees);" and estimates that they then (1806) numbered 300 warriors, or 2,000 souls. Cf. Biddle's account of their migrations (i, 164). — Ed.
poligised & proceeded on;² Sent the Peroge to Shore above with the Tobacco & Deliv'd it to a Sold. of the Chief with us. Several of them ran up the river, the Chf. on board threw them out a Small twist of Tobacco & told them to go back & open ther ears. They rec[ec]ved the Tobacco & returned to their lodges. we saw great numbers of white Guls. This day is Cloudy & rainey. refresh the men with a glass of whisky after Brackfast.

We Saw about 6 Miles above 2 Indians who Came to the bank and looked at us about 1½ an hour & went over the hills to the S. W. we proceeded on under a very stiff Breeze from the S. E., the Stern of the boat got fast on a log and the boat turned & was very near filling before we got her righted, the waves being very high, The Chief on board was so fritened at the Motion of the boat which in its rocking caused several loose articles to fall on the Deck from the lockers, he ran off and hid himself, we landed, he got his gun and informed us he wished to return, that all things were clear for us to go on, we would not see any more Tetons &c. we repeated to him what had been Said before, and advised him to keep his men away, gave him a blanket a Knife & some Tobacco, Smok'd a pipe & he set out. We also Set Sale and Came to at a Sand bar, & Camped, a very cold evening, all on guard.

Course Distance & reference — 1st October

N. 85° W. 3 M. to the upper p.' of a large Island in the River. (1)²
N. 75° W. 2 M. to the Mouth of Chien or Dog River on the L. S. (2)²
N. 16° W. 2½ Miles to a p.' on the S. S. Passed very bad Sand bars
N. 50° E. 4 Mile to some Willows on the L. S. passed 2 Creeks on the L. S. the upper Small.
S. 53 E. 4½ M.² to a p.' on the S. S. passing a Bluff on the L. S.

² Passed 60 Lodges of Tetons, the remainder of the band. — CLARK (memorandum on p. 225 of Codex C).
³ In MS., these figures are misplaced. — En.
⁴ Eronomously thus named, from the resemblance of the French word chien (dog) to the tribal name Cheyenne. — En.
Sand bars are so numerous, that it is impossible to describe them, & think it unnecessary to mention them.

The wind blew hard all last night from the S. E. verry cold. Set out early the wind still hard, passed a large Island in the middle of the river (1) 3 ½ ops. the lower point of this Island the Recreeres formerly lived in a large Town on the L. S. (remains only a mound circular walls 3 or ½ feet high) above the head of the Island about 2 miles we passed the (2) River Chien (or Dog River) (Chayenne) L. S. this river comes in from the S. W. and is about 400 yards wide, the Current appears gentle, throwing out but little Sands, and appears to throw out but little water the heads of this river is not known. in the second range of the Côte Noir its course generally about East. So called from the Chayenne Indians who live on the heads of it) a part of the nation of Dog Indians live some distance up this river, the precise distance I can't learn, above the mouth of this river the Sand bars are thick and the water Shoal the river Still verry wide and falling a little we are obliged to haul the boat over a Sand bar, after making several attempts to pass. the wind so hard we came too & Stayed 3 hours after it Slackened a little we proceeded on round a bend, the wind in the after part of the Day a head. (2) passed a Creek on the L. S. which we call the Sentinal, this part of the river has but little timber, the hills not so high, the Sand bars more numerous, & river more than one mile wide including the Sand bars. (2) pass a Small Creek above the latter which we call lookout C. Continued on with the wind immediately a head, and came too on a large Sand bar in the middle of the river, we saw a man opposite to our Camp on the L. S. which we discov'd to be a Frenchman, a little of the shore, we observed a house, we call to them to come over, a boy came in a canoe & informed that 2 Frenchmen were at the house with goods to trade with the Seauex which he expected down from the rickercres every day. Several large parties of Seauex set out from the rees for this place to trade with those men.
This M. *Jean Vallé*¹ informs us that he wintered last winter 300 Leagues up the Chien River under the Black mountains, he informs that this river is very rapid and difficult even for Perougues [Canoes] to ascend and when rising the Swells is very high, one hundred Leagues up it forks one fork Conies from the S. the other at 40 Leagues above the forks enters the black Mountain. The Country from the Missouri to the black mountains is much like the Country on the Missouri, less timber, & a great per potion of Cedar.

The black mountains he says is very high, and Some parts of it has Snow on it in the Summer great quantities of Pine Grow on the Mountains, a great Noise is heard frequently on those Mountains*. No beever on Dog river, on the Mountains great numbers of goat, and a kind of anamale with large circular horns, this animal is nearly the Size of an [Small] Elk. *[Argalea]* White bears is also plenty. The Chien (Cheyenne) Ind: are about 300 Lodges² they inhabit this river principally, and Steel horses from the Spanish Settlements, to the S W. this excursion they make in one month the bottoms & sides of R Chien is coarse gravel. This Frenchman gives an account of a white booted turkey an inhabitent of the Cout Noir (Prairie Cock)

— of October Monday 1804 at the Mouth of River Chien or Dog R³ —

We proceeded now from the mouth of this river 11 miles and camped on a Sand bar in the river opposit to a Trading house very windy & cold. 11 miles above — Chien R³ —

¹ Evidently meant for Jean Vallé — probably a relative of the François Vallé who was commandant at Ste. Genevieve at the time when that post was delivered by the Spaniards to the United States authorities. — Ed.

² The Cheyenne tribe is (like the Arapaho) of Algonquian stock. Powell thinks that these savages, having early separated from their kindred at the North, forced their way through hostile tribes, across the Missouri, into the Black Hills country — thus locating between the Siouan and the Shoshonean tribes. See Mooney's account of this tribe, in *U. S. Bur. Ethnol. Rep.,* 1892-94, pp. 1025-1027. — Ed.

³ This paragraph is found on p. 2 of Codex C. — Ed.
TETON TO MANDANS


S. 70° E. 2 ½ Miles to a wood on the L. Side, then a large Sand bar in the middle, & a Willow isle close under the L. S.

S. 8° E. 1 ½ M. on the L. S.

N. 62° E. 2 Miles on the L. S, a Willow bottom opposite the S. S.

N. 15° E. 4 Miles to the L. Side of an Island situated near the S. S.

N. 28° E. 2 Miles to the point of a Sand bar. Making from the head of the Island & Camped (1)

2 of October Tuesday 1874 —

a Violent wind all night from the S. E. Slackened a little and we proceeded on. M. Jon Tallie came on board and proceeded on 2 Miles with us, a very Cold morning. Some black Clouds flying took a Meridian altitude & made the Latitude 41° 39' 36". North. This was taken at the upper part of the gauge of the Lookout bend, the Sentinel heard a Shot over the hills to the L. S. during the time we were Dining on a large Sand bar. The after part of this day is pleasant. At 2 o'Clock we proceeded on 25 Lodges, we observed some Indians on a hill on the S. S. one came down to the river opposite to us and fired off his gun & beckoned to us to come too, we paid no attention to him. He followed on some distance, we spoke a few words to him, he wished us to go a Shore and to his Camp which was over the hill and consisted of 25 Lodges, we excused our Selves advised him to go and here our talk of M'. Durion, he enquired for traders we informed him one was in the next bend below, & parted, he returned, & we proceeded on. (1) passed a large Island, on the S. S. here we expected the Tetons would attempt to stop us and under that idea we prepared our selves for action which we expected every moment. Ops! this Island on the L. S. a small Creek comes in. This Island we call Is. 4 of Caution. We took in some wood on a favorable situation where we could

---

1. Gaye says (p. 68): "He said he belonged to the Jonka or Babarote band," probably referring to the Yankton. — Ed.
2. Now Plum Island. — Ed.
defend our Men on Shore & (2) Camped on a Sand bar ½ a Mile from the main Shore the Wind changed to the N. W. & rose very high and Cold which Continud. The Current of the Missourie is less rapid & Contains much less sediment, of the same Colour.

2nd of October Tuesday 1804

Proceeded on as mentioned in Journal No. 2 twelve miles camped above a large Island on a Sand bar very windy and cold the after part of this day, the mid day very warm. The Latitude as taken to day is 44° 19' 36" observe great caution this day expecting the Seaux intentions some what hostile towards our progression. The river not so rapid as below the Chien, its width nearly the same. 12 miles

3rd of October Wednesday 1804. — Wind blew hard all night from the N. W. Some rain and very Cold we Set out at 7 oClock & proceeded on

N. 50° E. 2 Ú M's to a p' of Wood on the L. S.
N. 54° E. 2 Miles to a p' of High Land on L. S. wind hard a head
North 2 Miles to a p' High Land on L. S. wind hard a head
N. 22° W. 4½ Miles to the head of good hope Island. 2 Indians Came to the mouth of a Creek on the S. S.

Shields

4th of October Wednesday 1804

The N. W. wind blew very hard all night with Some rain and a cold morning, we Set out at 7 oClock and proceeded on at 12 oClock landed on a Bare L. S. examined the Perogus & forecastle (forecastle) of the (boat) to see if the mice had done any damage, Several bags cut by them corn scattered &c Some of our clothes also spoiled by them, and papers &c, &c. at 1 oClock an Indian came to the bank S. S. with a turkey on his back, four others Soon joined him, we attempted several channels and could not find water to ascend, landed on

1 This entry is found on p. 2 of Codex C. — Ed.
2 At this point the journal is continued in Codex C, the last entry therein being dated April 7, 1805. — Ed.
TETON TO MANDANS

a Sand bar & concluded to Stay all night, & Send out and hunt a chanell, some rain this afternoon. Saw Brant and white gulls flying Southerly in large flocks.

Course Distance & reffrences. 3 rd

N. 50° E. 2½ miles to a point of wood on the Larboard Side.
N. 54° E. 2 ½ miles to a tree in the bend to the Larboard Side.
North 2 miles to a point of high Land on the Larboard side.
N. 22° W. 1½ miles on the L. Side under a Bluff.
8 miles

4th Oct. Thursday 1804 —

the wind blew all night from the NW. some rain, we were obliged to Drop down 3 miles to get the Channel Surf deep to pass up, Several Indians on the Shore viewing of us called to us to land one of them gave 3 yels & Sciped [skipped] a ball before us, we payed no attention to him, proceeded on and came too on the L. S. to brackit one of those Indians swam across to us beged for Powder, we gave him a piece of Tobacco & Set him over on a Sand bar, and set out, the wind hard ahead (1) passed a Island in the middle of the river about 3 miles in length, we call Good hope Island, (2) at 4 miles passed a (2) Creek on the L. S. about 12 yards wide Capt. Lewis and 3 men walked on Shore & crossed over to an (3) Island situated on the S. S. of the current & near the center of the river this Isl is about 1½ miles long & nearly ½ as wide, in the Center of this Island was an old village of the rickeries called La hoo catt it was circular and walled containing 17 lodges and it appears to have been deserted about five years, the Island contains but little timber. we camped on the Sand bar making from this Island, the day verry cool.

Course Distance & reffrences, 4th Oct:

N. 18° W. 8½ miles to a p' on the S. S. passed an Island Goodhope in the middle of the river (1)
N. 12° E. 1½ miles on the S. S. passed a creek on the L. S. (2)
N. 45° E. 2½ miles on the S. p' passed an Island on which there was a Village (3) of Rickerries in the year 1797. La hoo-catt

[179]
Frost this morning, we set out early and proceeded on (1) passed a small creek on the L. S. at 7 o'clock heard some yells proceeded on saw 3 Indians of the Teton band, they called to us to come on shore, beged some tobacco, we ans'red them as usual and proceeded on, passed (2) a creek on the S. S. at 3 m' above the mouth we saw one white Brant in a gang of about 30, the others all as dark as usual, a Description of this kind of Gees or Brant shall be given here after. Saw a gang of goats Swimming across the river out of which we killed four they were not fatt. in the evening passed a small (3) island situated close to the L. Side, at the head of this island a large creek comes in on the L. S. saw white Brants, we call this creek white Brant Creek. I walked on the island found it covered with wild rye, 1 shot a buck, saw a large gang of goat on the hills opposit, one buck killed, also a prairie wolf this evening. The high land not so high as below, river about the same width, the sand bars as numerous, the earth black and many of the bluffs have the Appearance of being on fire. We came too and camped on a mud bar making from the S. S. the evening is calm and pleasant, refreshed the men with a glass of whiskey.

Course Distance & references. — 5th October

N. 63° E. 1 1/2 miles to a point of timber on the L. S. passed a creek on the L. S. (1) high land on the S. S.

East. 3 miles to a point of timber on the L. S. passed a creek on the L. S. (1) high land on the S. S.

N. 80° E. 1 1/2 m's to a tree in the bend to the S. S.

N. 36° W. 2 m's to a p' of high land on the L. S. pass'd a creek on the S. S. (2)

N. 50° W. 3 miles to a point to the S. S.

N. 17° W. 3 m's to a tree on the S. S. pass'd a small island close on the L. S. above the S. S. island a creek comes in on the L. S.

N. 16° E. 6 m's to a p' on the L. Side opposit a Willow Island situated near the S. Shore
a cool morning wind from the North. Set out early passed
a willow Island (1) Situated near the S. Shore at the upper
point of Som timber on the S. S. many large round Stones
near the middle of the river, those Stones appear to have been
washed from the hills (2) passed a Village of about 80 feet
Lodges covered with earth and picketed around, those lodges
are Spacious [spacious — Ed.] of an Octagon form as close
together as they can possibly be placed and appear to have
been inhabited last Spring, from the Canoes of Skins Mats
buckits &c. found in the lodges, we are of opinion they were
the recrereis We found Squashes of 3 Different Kinds grow-
ing in the Village, one of our men killed an Elk close by
this Village, I saw 2 wolves in persute of another which
appeared to be wounded and nearly tired, we proceeded on
found the river Shole we made Several attempts to find the
main Channel between the Sand bars, and was obliged at length
to Drag the boat over to Save a league which we must return
to get into the deepest Channel, we have been obg" to hunt a
Chan' for Some time past the river being devided in many
places in a great number of Chanels, Saw Gees, Swan, Brants,
& Ducks of Different Kinds on the Sand bars to day, Cap'
Lewis walked on Shore Saw great numbers of Praie hens, I
observe but few Guils or Pleover in this part of the river,
The Corvos or Magpye is verry Common in this quarter.
We camped on a large Sand bar off the mouth of Beaver or
Otter Creek, on the S.S. this creek is about 22 yards wide
at the mouth and contains a greater perpotion of Water than
common for creeks of its Sise ^

Course Distance and REFERENCES — 6th Oct.

N. 4° E. 8 miles to a point of woodland on the L. S. passed a
willow Is! S. S.
N. 8° W. 1 M' on the L. Side
N. 32 W. 3 M' to a point on the S. S. passed an old Village of
the Rickorrees at the Cons' of this Course (2)
N. 45° W. 2 1/2 Miles the Mouth of Beaver (otter Creek) on the S. S.

\[ \text{a large Sand bar opposi} \]

1 Now Swan Creek, in Walworth Co. — Col. J. and C., i p. 155.
[ 181 ]
a Cloudy morning, Some little rain frost last night, we
Set out early proceeded on 2 miles to the mouth of a (1) River on the L.S. and brackfast this river when full is 90 yards wide the water is at this time Confined within 20 yards, the Current appears jentle, this river throws out but little Sand. at the mouth of this river we Saw the Tracks of white bear which was very large, I walked up this river a mile. below the (2) mouth of this river is the remains of a Rickorree Village or Wintering Camp fortified in a circular form of about 60 Lodges, built in the Same form of those passed yesterday
This Camp appears to have been inhabited last winter, many
of their willow and Straw mats, Baskets & Buffalow Skin Canoes remain intire within the Camp, the Ricaries call this river Sur-war-kar-na or Park.\(^1\)

**Course Distance & Referrences — 7th October**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Overall</th>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Distance</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>West</td>
<td>N. 42° W. 2</td>
<td>Miles to the Mouth of a River Caled Sur war car na in a bend to the L. S. (1) a village at Mo: (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N. 30° E. 3½</td>
<td>M. to a Clump of bushes in a bend to the S. S. passing for ½ mile on the L. S.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N. 30° W. 2</td>
<td>Miles to a pt of high land on the L. Side, passed a willow Island (3)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N. 35° W. 7</td>
<td>on the L. Side passed a Sand bar on the S. S. (4)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N. 10° W. 1</td>
<td>Mile on the L. S. to a pt.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N. 80° W. 3</td>
<td>miles to the left Side of an Island (5) in the mid river</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N. 45° W. 1</td>
<td>Mile to the head of the Willows at the head of the S. Grouse Isl!</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West</td>
<td>2½ miles to a point on the main S. S. a large Sand bar from the upper point of the Island high land on both Sides opposit this Island.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

from this river (which heads in the r' black mountains) we proceeded on under a gentle Breeze from the S.W. at 10 oClock we Saw 2 Indians on the S.S. they asked for something to eat, & informed us they were part of the Beiffs De Medesons (Beiffes de Medecines) Lodge on their way to the

\(^1\) Now Oni, or Moreau, River. — Ed.
Rickerrees passed (3) a Willow Island in a bend to the S.S. (4) at 5 Miles past a Willow Island on the S.S. Wind hard from the South in the evening I walked on an (5) Island nearly the middle of the river Called Gros Island, (the walls of a village on this island) one of the men killed a Shee Brarow, another man killed a Black tail Deer, the largest Doe I ever saw, (Black under her breast) this Island is nearly 1 1/4 m. Squar no timber high and Covered with grass wild rye and contains Great Numbers of Grouse, we proceeded on a Short distance above the Island and Camped on the S.S. a fine evening.

8th of October Monday 1804.—

A cool morning Set out early the wind from the N.W. proceeded on, passed the mouth of a Small Creek on the L.S. about 2 1/2 miles above Grouse Island, (3) passed a Willow Island which divides the Current equally. (2) passed the mouth of a River called by the Ricares Il'e tar hoo'on the L.S. this river is 120 yards wide, the water of which at this time is Confined within 20 yards, discharging but a Small quantity, throwing out mud with Small proportion of Sand, great quantities of the red Berries, ressembling Currents, are on the river in every bend. 77° 33' 00" Latitude from the observation of to day at the mouth of this river (heads in the Black mount'n) is 45° 39' 5" North. proceeded on passed a (3) Small river of 25 yards wide Called (4) Rear par or Beaver Dam R: this river [Ma ro pa] is entirely chocked up with mud, with a Stream of 1 Inch Diamiter passing through, discharging no Sand, at 1 (5) mile passed the lower pint of an Island close on the L.S. 2 of our men discovered the rickerree village, about the Center of the Island on the L. Side on the main Shore. this Island is about 3 miles long, Seperated from the L.S. by a Channel of about 60 yards wide very Deep. The Isl is covered with fields, where those People raise their Corn Tobacco Beans &c. &c. Great num-

1 Corrupt form of haurau (the badger). — Ed.
2 Now Grand River; an Indian agency of the same name at its mouth. — Ed.
3 Known as Rampart Creek, and Oak Creek. — Ed.
bers of those people came on the Island to See us pass, we passed above the head of the Island & Cap' Lewis with 2 interpreters & 2 men went to the Village. I formed a Camp of the french & the guard on Shore, with one Sentinel on board of the boat at anchor, a pleasan evening, all things arranged both for Peace or War. This Village (6) is Situated about the center of a large Island near the L. Side & near the foot of Some high bold uneven hills. Several french men Came up with Cap' Lewis in a Perogue, one of which is a M'Gravel-lin a man well versed in the language of this nation and gave us some information relative to the Countrey nat[ion] &c.

Courses Distance and refferences. — 8th Oct'

N. 70° W. 2 Miles to a tree in the bend to the L. Side, passed a small Creek L. S. (1)  
N. 10° W. 1 miles to the p' on the S. S.  
N. 15° E. 2
1/2 to the mo: of a River [He ter hoy 120 yds wide] in the bend to the L. S. (2) passing over a willow Island (3)  
N. 40° E. 1 mile on the L. Side  
N. 30° E. 1 mile on the L. S. to the Mouth of a Small river [Ma-r-pa] (4)  
N. 15° E. 1 mile to the lower p' of an Is! (5)  
North 31/2 Miles to a p', on the S. S. pass! the head of the Is! and the 1st rickories Village (6) opps! a Creek we Call after the 1st Chief Ka kaw iss assa Creek. L. S.

[Orderly Book; Clark:

Orders October the 8th 1804.

Robert Frazer being regularly enlisted and having become one of the Corps of Volunteers for North-W'ern Discovery, he is therefore to be viewed & respected accordingly; and will be anexed to Sergeant Gass's mess.

W° CLARK Cp' &c.
MERIWETHER LEWIS
Cap' 1st U.S. Regl Infty

¹ Joseph Graveline, a trader residing among the Arikara tribe, in company with Antoine Fabeau (Tabo), who is mentioned below. — Ed.
Order:

October 8th, 1804

Robert Frake being regularly enrolled and having become one of the corps of Volunteers at Fort
Western, his conduct, as therefore to be viewed, is respected according by
and will be annexed to
Surgeon Yates's maps.

Lewis and Clark

Page from the Orderly book, signed by both
Lewis and Clark.
TETON TO MANDANS

[Clark:

River Missouri of October 18-4. The 18th.

a windey rainy night, and cold. So much so we could not speak with the Indians to day the three great Chiefs and many others came to see us to day we gave them some tobacco and informed them we would speek on tomorrow, the day continued Cold & windey some rain. Sorry Canoos of Skins passed down from the 2 Villages a Short distance above and many came to view us all day, much astonishd at my black Servent, who did not lose the opportunity of displaying — Ed. — his powers Strength &c. &c. this nation never saw a black man before.

Several hunters came in with loads of meat, I observed several Canoos made of a Single Buffalow Skin with 3 thre squars cross the river to day in waves as high as I ever saw them on this river, quite uncomposed. I have a Slite Plурсie this evening very cold &c. &c.

1st Chief's name Ka-kwissidum (lighting Crow)
2d do do Pee>An (or Ha\)
3d do do piakets (or Eagles feather)

15th of October Wednesday 1844.

a fine morning wind from the S.E. at about 11 o'clock the wind shifted to the N. W. we prepare all things ready to speak to the Indians, Mr Tabo & Mr Gravolin came to brack-

1 By way of amusement he told them that he had once been a wild animal, and caught and tamed by his master; and to convince them showed them texts of strength which added to his looks made him more terrible than we wished him to be. — BIDDLE (i. p. 127).

In a rare pamphlet entitled Adventures of Ziona Leonard (Clearfield, Pa., 1839) — for information regarding which see CHITTENDEN'S Amer. Fur Trade, i. p. 74* — is an account of a negro residing (1832-34) in the Crow village at the junction of Big Horn and Stinking rivers, who apparently was Clark's servant York. He told Leonard that he first went to that country with Lewis and Clark, with whom he returned to Missouri; that he afterward accompanied a trader up the Missouri, and had remained with the Indians ever since (about ten or twelve years). He had, when Leonard saw him, four Indian wives, and possessed much reputation and influence among the Crow, from whom he secured the return of some horses which they had stolen from Leonard's party. — WALTER B. DOUGLAS (St. Louis).

2 Wind blew hard this morning drove the boat from her anker, to shore. — CLARK (memorandum on p. 224 of Codex C).
...the Cheifs &c. came from the lower Town, but none from the 2 upper Towns, which is the largest, we continue to delay & waite for them at 12 oClock Despatchd Gravelin to eivite them to come down, we have every reason to believe that a gellousy exists between the Villages for fear of our makeing the 1st Cheif from the lower Village, at one oClock the Cheifs all assembled & after Some little Cerremeny the council Commenced, we inform'd them what we had told the others before i.e. Ottoes & Seaux. made 3 Cheif 1 for each Village; gave them presents. after the Council was over we Shot the air guns which astonished them much, the[y] then Departed and we rested Secure all night, Those Indians were much astonished at my Servent, they never Saw a black man before, all flockd around him & examin' him from top to toe, he Carrierd on the joke and made himself more turrial than we wished him to doe. Those Indians are not fond of Spirit Liequer. of any kind

11: October Thursday 1804—

...a fine morning the wind from the S.E. at 11 oClock we met the Grand Cheif in Council and he made a Short Speech thanking us for what we had given him & his nation promissing to attend to the Council we had given him & informed us the road was open & no one dare Shut it, & we might Departe at pleasure, at 1 oClock we Set out for the upper Villages 3 miles distant, the Grand Cheif & nephew on board, proceeded on at 1 mile took in the 2d Cheif & Came too off the first [second] Village Seperated from the 3d by a Creek after arranging all matters we walked up with the 2d Cheif to his Village, and Set talking on Various Subjects untill late we also visited the upper or 3d Village each of which gave us Something to eate in their way, and a few bushels of Corn Beens &c. &c. after being treated by every civility by those people who are both pore & Durtey we returned to our boat

---

1 Much pleased, the french Cheif lost his presents by his Skin Canoe oversetting, shot the air gun, the men traded some few articles for Robes had the Corn mill set up & shewed the Ind; its operation after Speaking to them &c. — CLARK (at top).
at about 10 oCk. P.M. informing them before we Departed that we would Speak to them tomorrow at their separate Villages. Those people gave us to eate bread made of Corn & Beans, also Corn & Beans boil'd a large Been of which they rob the mice of the Praire (who collect & discover it) which is rich & very nourishing also [L]quashes &c. all Tranquility.

N. 45° E. 2 Miles to the mouth of a Creek between the 2 upper Villages of the Rickeres L. S. (1)
S. 75° E. 11½ Miles the point on the L. S. passed the Village (2)
N. 45° E. 2 Miles to a point of wood on the L. S.
N. 23° W. 2½ miles to a p't on the S. S.
N. 8 W. 11½ Miles to a point on L. S. passed a Sand bar.

9½

I rose early after breakfast we joined the Indians who were waiting on the bank for us to come out and go and consult, we accordingly joined them and went to the house of the 2' Cheif Liusel where there was many Cheif and Warriers & [they made us a present of—Bundle] about 7 bushels of Corn, a pr. of Leagins, a twist of their Tobacco, & Seeds of 2 Kind of Tobacco1 we Set Some time before the Councill Commenced this man spoke at some length declaring his disposition to believe and proceed our Councils, his intention of going to visit his great father acknowledged the Satisfaction in receiving the presents &c. rais'd a Doubt as to the Safety in passing the Nations below particularly the Souex requested us to take a Chief of their nation and make a good peace with Mandins & nations above. after answering those parts of the 2' Cheif's Speech which required it, which appeared to give general Satisfaction we went to the Village of the 3' Chief and as usual Some Serimony took place before he Could Speak to us on the Great Subject. This Chief Spoke very much in the [same] Stile on nearly the Same Subjects of the other Chief

1 Their tobacco is different from any I had before seen, it answers for smoking, but not for chewing. — Gass (p. 73).
who Set by his Side, more Sincere & pleasently, he presented us with about 10 bushels of Corn, Some beans & [s]quashes all of which we accepted with much pleasure, after we had ans his Speech & give them Some account of the Magnitude & power of our Country which pleased and astonished them very much we returned to our boat, the Chiefs accompanied us on board, we gave them Some Sugar a little Salt and a Sun Glass, & Set 2 on Shore & the third proceeded on with us to the Mandens by name [blank space in MS.] at 2 oClock we Set out the inhabitants of the two Villages Viewing us from the banks, we proceeded on about 9½ miles and Camped on the S.S. at Some woods passed, the evening Clear & pleasant Cool.

The Nation of the Rickeries (Rickaras) is about 600 men (M: Taboe says, I think 500 men) (M: Tabat is right) able to bear arms a Great perpotion of them have fuseses they appear to be peacefull, their men tall and perpotiend, women Small and indusserous, raise great quantities of Corn Beens Simmins* &c. also Tobacco for the men to Smoke they collect all the wood and do the drugery as Common amongst Savages.

This nation is (two villages are) made up of 10 (nine) Different Tribes of the Pania (Panics), who had formerly been Seperate, but by Commotion and war with their neighbours have Come reduced and compelled to come together for protection, The curruption of the language of those different Tribes has So reduced the language that the Different Villages do not understand all the words of the others. Those people are Durtey, Kind, pore, & extravagent. pursessing national pride, not beggarley recive what is given with great pleasure, Live in warm houses, large and built in an oxigon [octagon] form forming a cone at top which is left open for the smoke.

---

* A form of "simlin" or "simnel," a name used in the Southern States for summer squashes. — Ed.

** Clark's memorandum on p. 224 of Codex C.

---
to pass, those houses are generally 3½ or 4 foot Diameter, Cov'd with earth on poles willows & grass to prevent the earths passing thro'. Those people express an inclination to be at peace with all nations. The Senaux who trade the goods which they get of the Britsh Traders for their Corn, and [have] great influence over the Rickeres, poison their minds and keep them in perpetual dread.

I saw Some of the Chien (Chyenne) or Dog Indians, also a man of a nation under the Court Nue. This nation is at war with the Crow Indians & have 3 children prisoners.

a curious custom with the Souix as well as the rickeres is to give handsom squars to those whom they wish to Show some acknowledgements to. The Senaux we got clare of without taking their squars, they followed us with Squars two days. The Rickeres we put off during the time we were at the Towns but 2 [handsom young] Squars were Sent by a man to follow us, they came up this evening, and pursisted in their civilities.

Dress of the men of this nation is Simply a p' mockerson, Leagin, flap in front & a Buffalow roabe, with ther hair arms & cars Decorated.

The womin, wore Mockersons leagins fringed and a Shirt of Goat Skins, Some with Sleaves this garment is longe & Genl white & fringed, tied at the waste[.] with a roabe, in Summer without hair.

---

1 Ct. the more detailed descriptions of these huts given by Biddle (i, p. 176), Gass (p. 121), and Brackenridge (Louisiana, p. 245). — Ed.

2 The English traders not only traffic with the Indians about the shining [Rocky] mountains, but they have extended it to the Mandans on the Missouri, and to several other tribes both above and below them. The Spaniards also from Santa Fe occasionally traffic with the Indians about the waters of the Kinea, as likewise with those on the river Platte. — Stoddard (Louisiana, pp. 423, 424).

3 Brackenridge says (Louisiana, p. 245): "It is part of their hospitality, to offer the guest their wife, sister, or maid servant, according to the estimation in which the guest is held, and to refuse, is considered as treating the host with contempt." This was a custom widely prevalent among Indian tribes, especially those of the Far West. Biddle says (ii, p. 125) that Atikara regarded such intercourse with strangers as disgraceful, when occurring without the husband's or brother's consent. — Ed.
Names of the nations who come to the Ricaraes to traffic and bring Horses & robes

⊙ 1 - Kuy-nu-war-Woob - (Gens des vach) ¹ Blue beeds.
⊙ 2 - Nu-twé-ikan - Hill Climbers
* 3 - Gu-ni-bis - the people who pen Buffaloes to catch them
* 4 - Tse-ché-tab-was - Fox Indians
* 5 - Té-pal-iss - white hair's
⊙ 6 - Cat-tar-sab - Paducar.
* 7 - Ki-ta-tab - Tidying Indians
+ 8 - Té-tar-sar - Skin pricks
  9 - Shar ha (chien) - The village on the other side
  10 - Ho-ba shen(chien) - The villagers on this side

Those nations all live on the praries from S W by S to West of the Ricaraes - all speak different languages and are numerous, all follow the Buffalow and winter near the mountains.

15th of October Saturday 1804 --

one man J. Newmon confined for mutinous expression. Set out early proceeded on, pass'd a camp of Seaux on the S.S. those people only viewed us & did not speak one word. The visitors of last evening all except one returned which is the Brother of the Chief we have on board passed (11) a Creek 13 yds on the S.S. at 18 mi above the Town heading in some Ponds a Short Dist to the N.E. we call Stone Idol C. (well to observe here that the Yankton or R Jacque heads at about 2 Days March of this place Easterly, the R de Seaux one Day further, the Chien (Chayenne the Chay' formerly there) a branch of R. Rouche (Rouge) Still beyond, and the River S Peters 4 Days March from this place on the Same Deirection (Informent of the Rickores). Passed a large willow (2) & Sand Islands above the mouth of the last Creek. at 21 Miles

¹ A French nickname, meaning “cow people” — that is, Buffalo tribe. The Indian name here given — written by Biddle (i. p. 14) Kaninawiesz — is only an Chippewa appellation of that tribe, now known as the Arapaho, one of the westernmost Algonquian tribes (see Mooney's sketch of this people, in U. S. Bu. Ethol. Rep., 1892-93, pp. 951-952). Lewis, however, in his “Statistical View” (p. 18) applies the name Art-kah-pa-chos' to a branch of the Pawnee. — En.
above the Village passed a (1) Creek about 15 yards wide on
the L.S. we call after 2 Chief Pocasse (or Hay), nearly
oppos'd this Creek a few miles from the river on the S.S. 2
Stones resembling humane persons & one resembling a Dog is
Situated in the open Prairie, to those Stones the Rickores
pay Great reverence make offerings (votive Dress &c.) whenever
they pass (Inform of the Chief & Interpreter) those
People have a curious Tredition of those Stones, one was a
man in Love, one a Girl whose parents would not let [them]
marry (The man as is customary went off to mourn, the female
followed.), the Dog went to mourn with them, all turned to
Stone gradually, commencing at the feet. Those people fed
on grapes until they turned, & the woman has a bunch of
grapes yet in her hand, on the river near the place those are
Said to be Situated, we ob's a greater quantity of fine grapes
than I ever saw at one place.

The river above the Island on which the Lower Rickores
Village is Situated is narrow and cont a great[er] proportion of
Timber than below, the bottoms on both Sides is covered
with timber the up lands naked the current jentle and Sand
bars confined to the points Generally.

We proceeded on under a fine Breeze from the S.E. and
camped late at the upper part of Some wood on the Starboard
Side. Cold & some rain this evening, we Sent out hunters
killed one Deer.

we Tried the Prisoner Newmon last night by 9 of his Peers
they did "Sentience him 75 Lashes & Disbanded [from] the
party."

Course distance & reference — 13th Oct:

N. 60° W. 3 Miles to a p' on the S. S.
N. 45° W. 2 Miles to a p' of timber on L. S.
N. 30° W. 2 Miles to the p' on the L. S.
N. 53° W. 1½ M's to a p' on the S. S.
North 2 M's to a p' on the L. S. opsit the mouth of a Creek
on the S. S. (1)
N. 75° W. 4½ Miles to a p' on the S. S. passing a Island (2) and
op's a Creek L. S. (3)
N. 18° E. 3 M's to the upper point of Some wood on the S. S. and
camped.
A Court Martial to Consist of nine members will set to day at 12 oClock for the trial of John Newman now under Confinement. Cap' Clark will attend to the forms & rules of a president without giving his opinion.

Detail for the Court Martial

Serg' John Ordway
Sergeant Pat: Gas-
Jo: Shields
H: Hall
Jo: Collins

Meriwether Lewis Cap'
1st U'S. Reg' Infty
Wm Clark Cap'
or E. N W D [Engineer North Western
Discovery. — Ed.]

In conformity to the above order the Court martial convened this day for the trial of John Newman, charged with “having uttered repeated expressions of a highly criminal and “mutinous nature; the same having a tendency not only to "destroy every principle of military discipline, but also to "alienate the affections of the individuals composing this "detachment to their officers, and disaffect them to the ser-
vice for which they have been so sacredly and solemnly "engaged." The Prisonar plead not guilty to the charge exhibited against him. The court after having duly considered the evidence aduced, as well as the defence of the said prisoner, are unanimously of opinion that the prisoner John Newman is guilty of every part of the charge exhibited against him, and do sentence him agreeably to the rules and articles of war, to receive seventy five lashes on his bear back, and to be henceforth discarded from the permanent party engaged for North Western discovery; two thirds of the Court concurring.
in the sum and nature of the punishment awarded, the commanding officers approve and confirm the sentence of the court, and direct the punishment take place tomorrow between the hours of one and two P.M. The commanding officers further direct that John Newman in future be attached to the mess and crew of the red Perogue as a labouring hand on board the same, and that he be deprived of his arms and accoutrements, and not he permitted the honor of mounting guard until further orders; the commanding officers further direct that in lieu of the guard duty from which Newman has been exempted by virtue of this order, that he shall be exposed to such drudgeries as they may think proper to direct from time to time with a view to the general relief of the detachment.

[Clark:]

14th of October Sunday 1804.

Some rain last night all wet & cold, we Set [out] early the rain contin'd all Day, at [blank in MS.] miles we passed a Creek on the L.S. 15 yards wide this Creek we call after the 3d Chief Piaheto (or Eagles feather) at 1 oClock we halted on a Sand bar & after Dinner executed the Sentence of the Court Martial so far as giving the Corporal punishment, & proceeded on a few Miles, the wind a head from N.E. Camped in a Cove of the bank on the S.S. immediately opposit our Camp on the L.S. I observe an antient fortification the Walls of which appear to be 8 or 10 feet high, (most of it washed in) the evening wet and disagreeable, the river Something wider more timber on the banks.

The punishment of this day allarm'd the Indian Chief very much, he cried aloud (or effected to cry) I explain'd the Cause of the punishment and the necessity (of it) which he (also) thought examples were also necessary, & he himself had made them by Death, his nation never whiped even their Children, from their burth.

1 In North Dakota, close to 46, at a creek now called Thunder-hawk. Piaheto is now Blackfoot Creek. — CORIUS (L. and C., i. p. 168).
Courses & Distance & refurences. — 14th

<p>| | | | | | | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S.</td>
<td>70°</td>
<td>W.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>M° to a p' on the L.S. the Same course continud 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>0°</td>
<td>E.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>M° to the p' on the S.S. pass’d a Creek on the</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30°</td>
<td>W.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>M° to a large Tree on the L.S.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>40°</td>
<td>E.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>M° to some trees on the S.S.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>60°</td>
<td>W.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td>M° to a p' on the L.S. Passi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>70°</td>
<td>W.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td>Miles to a point on the S.S. pass’d an antient forti-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
15th of October Monday 1804 —

rained all last night, we Set out early and proceeded on at 3 miles passed an Ind’ Camp (of hunters Ricaras) on the S.S. we halted above and about 30 of the Indians came over in their canoos of Skins, we eate with them, they give us meat, in return we gave fish hooks & some beads, about a mile higher we came too on the L.S. at the camp of the Recores (ricaras) of about 8 Lodges, we also eate and they gave Some meat, we proceeded on Saw numbers of Indians on both Sides passing a Creek, Saw many curious hills, high and much the resemblance of a house with a hiped (like ours) roof, at 12 o’Clock it cleared away and the evening was pleasant, wind from the N.E. at Sunset we arrived at a Camp of Recares of 10 Lodges on the S.S. we came too and camped near them Cap’ Lewis and my self went with the Chief who accomanis us, to the Huts of Several of the men all of whom Smoked & gave us something to eate also Some meat to take away, those people were kind and appeared to be much pls’d at the attentioned paid them.

Those people are much pleased with my black Servent. Their womin verry fond of carressing our men &c.
Course Distance & References — 15th Oct

West 2½ Miles to a Creek on the L.S. passing over a Sand bar making from the S. p.

North 4 Miles to a point of wood on the L. S. passing over a sand point on the S.S.

N. 34° W. 4½ Miles to a point of wood on the S. S. passing old Village of the Shar ha or Chien Indians on the L.S. below a Creek on the same Side. passed a Camp of Ricases on S.S.

16th of October Tuesday 1814 —

Some rain this morning, 2 young squaws very anxious to accompany us, we Set out with our Chief on board by name Ar ke tar na shar or Chief of the Town, a little above our camp on the L.S. passed a circular work, where the, Shar ha or Chien, or Dog Indians formerly lived a short distance above passed a Creek which we call Chien Creek (Chyenne or Shar ha (Mr Hayley says Not Chien), above is a willow Island Situated near (1) the L. Side a large Sand bar above & on both Sides (2) passed a Creek above the Island on the L.S. call So-harch (or Girls) Creek, at 2 miles higher up (3) passed a Creek on L.S. call Charpart¹ (or womans Creek) passed (5) an Island Situated in a bend to the S.S. this ls² is about 1½ Miles long, covered with timber Such as Cotton wood, opsl³ the lower point a creek coms in on [sentence incomplete — Ed.] the S.S. called by the Indians Kee tuch Sar kar nar [Kee toosh shaw na — Biddle] (or place of Beaver) above the Island a small river coms in about 35 yards wide called W'ar ra en ne² or (Elk Shed their horns). The Island is called Carp Island by Ivens [Evans] Wind hard from the N.W. Saw great numbers of Goats on the Shore S.S. proceeded on Cap' Lewis & the Indian Chief walked on Shore, soon after I discovered great numbers of Goats in the river, and Indians on the Shore on each Side, as I approached or

¹ These names are spelled by Biddle, Sodaweh and Chapawi; he says that they are Arikara words. — Ed.
² The present name is Big Beaver Creek; at its mouth is the town of Emmettsburg, N. D. — Ed.

[ 195 ]
got nearer I discovered boys in the water Killing the goats with Sticks and hailing them to Shore, Those on the banks Shot them with arrows and as they approach the Shore would turn them back, one of our hunters out with Cap Lewis killed three Goats, we passed the Camp on the S.S. and proceeded 1/2 mile and camped on the L.S. many Indians came to the boat to See, Some came across late at night, as they approach they hollowed and Sung, after Staying a short time 2 went for Some meat, and returned in a Short time with fresh & Dried Buffalow, also goat, those Indians Stayed all night, they Sung and was verry merry the greater part of the night.

Course Distance & refrences — 16th Oct.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>North</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>Miles to a p't on the S.S. Passed a Willow Island</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. 10° E.</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Miles to the upper point of Some Timber on the L.S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ops the mouth of a Creek on the S.S. (4) passed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>a Isl on the S.S. (5) Ops the lower p't of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>which comes in a Creek (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>Mile on the L. Side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 30° W.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Mile on the L. point High L'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 38° W.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Miles to a point on the S.S.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Distance & refrences. — 17th Oct.

| N. 10° E. | 11 1/2 | Miles to a p't on the L.S. |
| North   | 1 1/2 | Mile on the L.S. |
| N. 10° W. | 1 1/2 | Mile on the L.S. |
| N. 33° W. | 3 1/2 | Mile to the commencement of Some woods on the L.S. |

Note from the Ricas to the River Jacque near N.E. is about 40 m. to the Chien a fork of R Rogue further passing the Souix River near the Chien this from information of M' Graveline who passed through this Country.

1 Meaning Rouge — that is, Red River (of the North). — Ed.
1804]

TETON TO MANDANS


Set out early a fine morning the wind from the N.W. after breakfast I walked on Shore with the Indian Chief & Interpeters, Saw Buffalow, Elk and Great numbers of Goats in large gangues (I am told by M' G. that those animals winter in the Black Mountains to feed on timber &c.) and this is about the season they cross from the East of the Missouries to go to that Mountain, they return in the Spring and pass the Missouries in great numbers to the plains. This Chief tells me of a number of their Traditions about Turtles, Snakes, &c. and the power of a particular rock or Cove on the next river which informs of every thing none of those I think worth while mentioning. The wind So hard a head the [boat] could not move after 10 oClock. Cap' Louis took the altitude of the Sun Lat. 46° 25'. 57". I killed 3 Deer, and the hunters with me killed 3 also, the Indian Shot one but could not get it, I scaffled up the Deer & returned & met the boat after night on the L.S about 6 miles above the place we camped last night. one of the men saw a number of Snakes, Cap' Lewis Saw a large Beaver house S.S. I caught a whippoorwill Small & not common. the leaves are falling fast. the river wide and full of Sand bars. Great numbers of very large Stone on the Sides of the hills & some rock of a brownish Colour in the L. Bend below this.

Great numbers of Goats are flocking down to the S. Side of the river, on their way to the Black mountains where they winter. Those animals return in the Spring in the Same way & scatter in different directions.


Set out early proceeded on at 6 m. passed the mouth of (1) la [Le] Boulet (or Cannon Ball River) about 140 yards wide on the L.S. this river heads in the Court Noi or Black

[197]

1 That is, scaffled, to be above the reach of wolves. — Ed.
2 Nuttall's whippoorwill (Phalaenoptilus Nutalli). — Ed.
Mountains (a fine Day) above the mouth of the river Great numbers of Stone perfectly round with fine Grit are in the Bluff and on the Shore, the river takes its name from those Stones which resemble Cannon Balls. The water of this river is confined within 40 yards. We met 2 frenchmen in a perogue Decending from hunting, & complained of the Mandans robing them of 4 Traps their furs & Several other articles. Those men were in the imploy of our Ricaree interpreter M. Gravelin the[y] turned & followed us.

Saw Great numbers of Goats on the S.S. coming to the river our hunters Killed 4 of them Some run back and others crossed & proceded on their journey to the Court Nou at (3) passed a Small River called Che wak or fish river ¹ on the S.S. this river is about 28 yards wide and heads to the N.E. passed a small creek on the L.S. 1 mile above the last, and camped on a Sand bar on the L.S. opposit to us we Saw a Gangue of Buffalow bulls which we did not think worth while to kill, our hunters killed 4 Coats [Goats] 6 Deer 4 Elk & a pelican & informs that they Saw in one gang: 248 Elk, (1 walked on Shore in the evening with a view to see Some of those remarkable places mentioned by evins [Evans — Ed.], none of which I could find). The Countrey in this Quarter is Generally leavel & fine Some high Short hills, and some ragid ranges of Hills at a Distance

Course Distance & References — 18th Oct

N. 50°. W. 3 Miles to the mouth of a River (1) cannon ball !.. S.
N. 20°. W. 2 Miles to a point of wood land on the S.S. passing a Bluff in which there's round stone (2)
North 24 miles to a point of wood land on the L. S.
N. 15°. W. 1¼ Mile on the L. S. ops! a Creek on the S. S. (3)
N. 10°. E. 2½ miles to a point on the S. S. passing a small Creek on L. S.
N. 20°. E. 3 miles to a point of woods on the L. S. passing over a Sand bar

¹ Now Long Lake Creek : this day's encampment was near Fort Rice. — Ed.
The recaree Indians inform us that they find no black tail Deer as high up as this place, those we find are of the fallow Deer kind.

The recarees are not fond of Spiritous liquors, nor do they appear to be fond of Receiving any or thankfull for it. [they say we are no friends or we would not give them what makes them fools].

A fine morning wind from the S.E. we set out early under a gentle Breeze and proceeded on very well, more timber than common on the banks on this part of the river. Passed a large Pond on the S.S. I walked out on the Hills & observed Great numbers of Buffalow feeding on both Sides of the river. I counted 52 Gangues of Buffalow & 3 of Elk at one View, all the runs which come from the high hills which is generally about one or 2 miles from the water is brackish and near the Hills (the Salts are) and the Sides of the Hills & edges of the Streems, [the mineral salts appear]. I saw some remarkable round hills forming a cone at top one about 90 foot one 60 & several others Smaller, the Indian Chief say that the Callemet birdlive in the holes of those hills, the holes form by the water washing away this Some parts in its passage down from the top—near one of those holes [knolls], on a point of hill 90 feet above the lower plane I observed the remains of an old village, (high, strong, watchtower &c.) which had been fortified, the Indian Chief with us tells me, a party of Mandins lived there, [Here first saw ruins of Mandan nation] we proceeded on & camped on the S. S. opposit the upper of those conical hills. our hunters killed 4 Elk 6 Deer & a pelican, I saw Swans in a Pond & killed a fat Deer in my walk, saw about 10 wolves. This day is pleasant.

1 The golden eagle (Aquila chrysaetos)—thus named because its tail-feathers are used to decorate the calumet-pipes of the Indians, who attach great value to these ornaments. — Ed.
Course Distance & Reference — 19th Oct.

N. 60° W. 2¼ M" to a p' on the S.S. Passed a Creek on the S.S.

N. 45° W. 2 M" to Some wood in a bend on the L.S.

N. 10° E. 1¼ mile to the point on the L.S.

N. 20° W. 2 miles to a tree in the bend S.S.

N. 83° W. 3 miles to the point on the S.S.

N. 44° W. 1 mile to a Willow point on the L.S. p't a Lake S.S.

N. 30° W. 2 miles to a tree in the bend to the S.S.

N. 80° W. 3½ miles to a point on the S.S. (2) opposite a round hole on the L.S. a Deep bend to the L.S. & pond.

Courses Distance & References. — 20th October

N. 35° W. 2 Miles to Some timber in a bend to the S.S. at a Creek (1)

N. 10° W. 1 mile on the S.S.

N. 54° W. 3 miles to a p' on the L.S. Is! passing over a Sand bar S.

N. 2 miles to some high trees in a bend on the S.S. passing the low p' Is! (2)

N. 70° W. 2 Miles to a p' on the S.S. passing the upper p' of the Island on the L.S.

N. 50° W. 2 M" to the upper part of a Bluff in which there (3) is Stone Cole on the L.S. passing the 1st old Mandan Village on the L.S. (4)

20th of October Saturday 1804 —

Set out early this morning and proceeded on the wind from the S.E. after breakfast I walked out on the L. Side to see those remarkable places pointed out by Evins. I saw an old remains of a village (covering 6 or 8 acres) on the Side of a hill which the Chief with Too nél tells me that nation lived in 2 [a number] villages 1 on each Side of the river and the Troublesom Seaux caused them to move about 40 miles higher up where they remained a few years & moved to the place they now live, (2) passed a small Creek on the S.S. (3) and one on the L.S. passed (4) a Island covered with willows laying in the middle of the river no current on the L.S. Camped on the L.S. above a Bluff containing coal (5) of an inferior quallity, this bank is imediately above the old Village of the Mandans. The Countrey is fine, the high hills at a Distance with gradual [200]
assents, 1 kill'd Deer. The Timber confined to the bottoms as usual which is much larger than below. Great numbers of Buffalow Elk & Deer, Goats, our hunters killed 10 Deer & a Goat to day and wounded a white Bear, 1 saw several fresh tracks of those animals which is 3 times as large as a mans track. The wind hard all Day from the N. E. & East, great numbers of buffalow Swimming the river. I observe near all large gangues of Buffalow wolves and when the buffalow move those animals follow, and feed on those that are killed by accident or those that are too pore or fat to keep up with the gangue.

2d: Other Sunday 1804 -

a verry Cold night wind hard from the N. E. Some rain in the night which froze as it fell at Day light it began to Snow and continued all the fore part of the Day. passed just above our camp (1) a Small river on the L. S. called by the Indians Chiss-che-tar [Chisshe-taw — Biddell] this river is about 38 yards wide containing a good Deel of water 2 Some distance up this River is Situated a Stone which the Indians have great faith in & say theySee painted on the Stone, all the Calmetes & good fortune to hapin the nation & parties who visit it. a tree [an oak] which Stands [alone] near this place [about 2 miles off] in the open prairie which has withstood the fire they pay Great respect to make Holes and tie Strings thro [the skins of their] their necks and around this tree to make them brave [Cap. Clarke saw this tree] (all this is the information of Too ne [is a whipperwill] the Cheif of the Riceares who accompanied us to the Mandins, at 2 Miles (2) passed the 2nd Village of the Mandins which was in existance at the same time with the 1st this Village is at the foot of a hill on the S.S. in a butifull & extensive plain, (nearly opposite is another

1 Pierre Cruzat: shot a white bear left his gun, &c. — Clark (memorandum on p. 233 of Codex C).
2 Now known as Heart River; just above are the towns of Bismarck and Mandan, N. D., joined by the N. P. Railway bridge. Just below the river are the ruins of Fort Abraham Lincoln, Custer's post in 1876. The encampment of Lewis and Clark on October 20, 1804, was a little above the site of the fort. — O. D. Wheller. 

[201]
LEWIS AND CLARK JOURNALS  [Oct. 22
village in a bottom the other side of Missouri) at this time covered with Buffalow. a cloudy afternoon, I killed a fine Buffalow, we camped on the L. S. (below an old Mandan village having passed another up a Creek 3 miles below on S. S. very cold Ground covered with Snow. one orter [otter] killd.

Course Distance & reffer — 21st Oct.
S. 85° E. 2 miles to the place the Mandans had a village formerly at the foot of a rising part of the plain. (1) on the S. S. passed a river
N. 16° W. 11 1/2 miles to a grove on the S. S.
N. 40° W. 3 1/2 Miles to a p' on the S. S. river wide and sand bars a large willow Island

22d October Monday 1804 —

last night at 1 oClock I was violently and Suddenly attacked with the Rhumetism in the neck which was So violent I could not move Cap' [Lewis] applied a hot Stone raped in flannel, which gave me some temporey ease. We Set out early, the morning Cold at 7 oClock we came too at a camp of Teton Seaux on the L. S. those people 12 in number were nack.1 and had the appearance of war, we have every reason to believe that they are going or have been to Steel Horses from the Mandins, they tell two Stories, we gave them nothing after takeing breakfast proceeded on. my Neck is yet very painfull at times Spasms. (Passed old Ma[?]dan village near which we lay, another at 4 miles, one at 8 miles at mouth of large creek 4 miles further all on Larboard side. (The mounds, 9 in number along river within 20 miles the fallen down earth of the houses, some teeth and bones of men & animals mixed in these villages, human skulls are scattered in these villages)

Camped on the L. Side, passed an Island Situated on the L. Side at the head of which we pass a bad place & Mandans village S. S. (2 miles above). The hunters killed a buffalow

1 14 Sioux came to us on the L. S. with their guns cocked, believe them to be a war party they were naked except their Leagins — CLARK (memorandum on p. 223 of Codex C).

Of these savages: "Notwithstanding the coldness of the weather, they had not an article of clothing except their breech-clouts." — Gass (p. 79).
boul, they Say out of about 300 buffalow which they saw, they did not, see one Cow. Great Deal of Beaver Sign. Several Cought every night.

Course Distance & Reflurences—22° Oct

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direction</th>
<th>Distance</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. 50° W. 3</td>
<td>Miles to a p' on the S. S.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 34° W. 3</td>
<td>Miles to the lower point on an Island on the L. S.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 34° W. 3</td>
<td>Miles to a p' on the S. S. passed a bad ruffle or bar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Mile to a point on the L. S. a Deep bend to the S. S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 24° W. 2</td>
<td>miles to a point on the S. Side.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

22 Oct. Wednesday 1804—

a cloudy morning some Snow Set out early. pass five Lodges which was Diserted, the fires yet burning we Suppose those were the Indians who robed the 2 trench Trappers a few days ago those 2 men are now with us going up with a view to get their property from the Indians thro. us. cold & cloudy camped on the L. S. of the river

(Saw at 12 miles passed old village on S. S. of Maharka "Ind', a band of Minnetarres who now live between Mand & Minnetarres) (*Ah na ha wa'a [Ahwaheways — Biddle] see note to May 1805)

Course Distance & reflurences

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direction</th>
<th>Distance</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. 45° E. 2</td>
<td>Miles to a Tree in the bend S. S.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 18° W. 1 1/2</td>
<td>Mils to High land on S. S.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 65° W. 3</td>
<td>Mils to a tree in the bend L. S.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 33° W. 2 1/2</td>
<td>Mils to a p' on the L. S.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 18° W. 1</td>
<td>mile on the L. S.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 45° W. 3</td>
<td>Miles to a point on the S. S. passing as common many</td>
<td>Sand bars</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Distance & reflurences—24th Oct.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direction</th>
<th>Distance</th>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. 20° W. 1</td>
<td>Mile to a p' on the S. S.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 10° W. 2</td>
<td>Miles to a p' on the L. S. at this place the river has laterly Cut thro forming a large Island to the S. S. (1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 35° W. 2</td>
<td>Miles to an object on the S. S.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 64° W. 2</td>
<td>Miles to a point of high land on which the Mandins formerly lived (2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Near Sanger, N. D., a short distance south of Deer Creek. — Ed.
LEWIS AND CLARK JOURNALS  

24th October Wednesday 1804 —

Set out early a cloudy day Some little Snow in the morning I am Something better of the Rhumitism in my neck. a butifull Country on both Sides of the river. the bottoms cov'd with wood. we have Seen no game on the river to day — a prof of the Indians hunting in the neighbourhood (i) passed a Island on the S. S. made by the river Cutting through a point, by which the river is Shortened Several miles. on this Isl we Saw one of the Grand Chiefs of the Mandins, with five Lodges hunting, this Chief met the Chief of the Ricas who accompanied us with great Cordiallity & serimony Smoked the pipe & Cap' Lewis with the Interpreter went with the Chiefs to his Lodges at 1 mile distant, after his return we admeted the Grand Chief & his brother for a few minits on our boat. proceeded on a Short distance and camped on the S. S. below the old village of the Mandins & ricas. Soon after our land'g 4 mandins came from a camp above, the Ricas Chief went with them to their Camp,

Course Distance & Reflurences — 25th of October.
N. 8° W. 3 Miles to a p' on the L. Side passed an old Village (1)
West 1 Mile on the L. Side
S. 8° W. 1 Mile on the L. Side
S. 60° W. 2 Miles to a p' on the L. Side
S. 30° W. 2 Miles to a Tree on the Larboard Side
S. 33° W. 2 Miles to a point on the Starboard Side opposit a high hill

25th of October Thursday 1804. —

a cold morning. Set out early under a gentle Breeze from the S. E. by E. proceeded on, passed (1) the 3rd old Village of the Mandans which has been Des't for many years, This village was situated on an eminance of about 40 foot above the water on the L. S. back for Several miles is a butifull Plain (2) at a Short distance above this old Village on a Continuation of the same eminance was Situated the Ricas Village (two old villages of ricas) one on top of high hill the 2d below in the bottom.) which has been evacuated only Six (five) years, (about 3 or 4

1 Near Washburn, N. D. — Ed.
Miles above Ricasas villages are villfes of Mandans near together—here they lived when the R's came for protection—afterwards moved where they now live.—above this Village a large and extensive bottom for several miles in which the Squaws raised their Corn, but little timber in the Villages on the S. S. below is a point of excellent timber, and in the point several miles above is fine timber. Several parties of Mandans rode to the river on the S. S. to view us indeed they are continually in Sight Satisfying their Curiosities as to our apperance &c. We are told that the Saxus has latterly fallen in with & Stole the horses of the Big bellies, on their way home they fell in with the Ossinisbon who killed them and took the horses. A frenchman has latterly been killed by the Indians on the Track to the trading establishment on the Ossinechina R. in the North of this place (or British fort). This frenchman has lived many years with the Mandins, we were frequently called on to land & talk to parties of the Mandins on the Shore; wind shifted to the S. W at about 11 oClock and blew hard untill 3 oClk. clouded up river full of Sand bars & we are at a great loss to find the channel of the river, frequently run on the Sand bars which Delayed us much passed a very bad riffle of rocks in the evening by taking the L. S. of a sand bar2 and camped on a Sand point on the S. S. opposite a high hill on the L. S. Several Indians came to see us this evening, amongst others the Sun of the late Great Chief of the Mandins (meaning for his father), this man has his two little fingers off; on inquiring the cause, was told it was customary for this nation to Show their grief by some testimony of pain, and that it was not uncommon for them to take off 2 Smaller fingers of the hand (at the 2 joints) and some times more with other marks of Savage effection.

1 A common but somewhat erroneous translation of Gros Ventres, the French appellation of a tribe who form a division of the Arapahos people. The name Gros Ventres is also applied, as here, to the Siouan Mandans (more correctly known as Hidatsa). See Mooney's Sketch of the Arapahos, C. S. Rep. Ethn. & Ref., 1892-94, pp. 944, 945. The Assiniboins are a division of the Siouan family; most of them dwell in British territory. — Ep.

2 All obliged to get out and haul the boat over — Class (memorandum on p. 223 of Codex C).
The wind blew very hard this evening from the S.W. very cold. R. Fields with the Rhumitism in his neck, P. Crusat with the same complaint in his legs—the party other wise is well, as to my self I feel but slight Simptoms of that disorder at this time.

26th of October Friday 1824—

Set out early wind from the S.W. proceeded on saw numbers of the Mandins on Shore, we set the Ticare Chief on Shore, and we proceeded on to the Camp of two of their Grand Chiefs where we delayed a few minits, with the Chiefs and proceeded on taking two of their Chiefs on board & some of the heavy articles of his house hold, Such as earthen pots & Corn, proceeded on, at this Camp saw a (Mr) McCracken Englishmon from the N.W. (Hudson Bay) Company, this man Came nine Days ago to trade for horses & Buffalow robes,—one other man came with him, the Indians continued on the banks all day, but little wood on this part of the river, many Sand bars and bad places, water much devided between them.

We came too and camped on the L. S. about 1/2 a mile below the 1° Mandin Town on the L. S. soon after our arrival many men womin & children flocked down to See us, Cap' Lewis walked to the village with the principal Chiefs and our interpreters, my Rhumatic complaint increasing I could not go. if I was well only one would have left the Boat & party until we new the Disposition of the Ind'. I Smoked with the Chiefs who came after. Those people ap'd much pleased with the Corn Mill which we were obliged to use, & was fixed in the boat.

1 Early explorations by French and English navigators and traders led to the establishment (May 2, 1663) of the Hudson's Bay Company, with headquarters in London, who long held a monopoly of the fur trade in the great Northwest. In 1783–84 some of the leading Montreal merchants organized a rival association, known as the North West Company; but after a long and fierce competition for supremacy in the fur trade, the Hudson's Bay Company finally absorbed its rival (March 26, 1821). Hugh McCracken was an Irish "free trader," usually employed by the North West Company, who had accompanied David Thompson and Alexander Henry in their journeys through the Upper Missouri region. — Ed.

2 Not far from Stanton, N. D. — Ed.
Course Distance & off — 26 Oct.

N. 45° W. 1 M. to a tree in the bend to the Larboard Side
N. 70° W. 1 M. to a p' on the S. S.
S.  26° W. 2 M. to a Camp of Mandans wood in the bend L. S.
    West. 1 M. to a tree in bend L. S. passed a Small Creek
N.  27° W. 3 M. to the p' Fort Mandan stands on. Passing a Bluff of indt Coal L. S.
N.  55° W. 1 M. to a p' on the L. S.
S.  60° W. 2 M. to the 1st Village of the Mandins Situated on the L. Side in an open Plain.
Chapter V

AMONG THE MANDANS

Clark's Journal, October 17—December 27, 1804

[Clark:]

25th of October Saturday 1804. Mandans. —

We set out early came too at the Village on the L.S. this village is situated on an eminance of about 50 feet above the Water in a handsom plain it contains [blank space in MS.] houses\(^1\) in a kind of Picket work, the houses are round and very large containing several families, as also their horses which is tied on one Side of the enterance, a Description of those houses will be given hereafter. I walked up & smoked a pipe with the Chiefs of the Village they were anxious that I would stay and eat with them, my indisposition prevented my eating which displease them, until a full explanation took place, I returned to the boat and sent 2 Carrots of Tobacco for them to smoke, and proceeded on, passed the 2\(^1\) Village and camped opp's the Village of the Weter soon\(^2\) [or Ah wah har ways] which is situated on an eminance in a plain on the L.S. this Village is small and contains but few inhabitants.\(^3\) above this Village also above the Knife river on the Same Side of the Missouri the Big bellies Towns are situated a further De-

---

1 This village contains 40 or 50 lodges, built in the manner of those of the Rickarees. — Gass (p. 81).

2 A division of the Hidatsa, called by the French Gens de Soulier. They were kindred to the Minutaree but maintained a separate tribal organization until about 1836. See Washington Matthews’s *Ethnography and Philology of the Hidatsa Indians* (Washington, 1877); McGee’s account of this tribe in U. S. Bur. Ethnol. Rep., 1893-94, pp. 197, 198. — Ed.

3 These Indians have better complexions than most other Indians, and some of the children have fair hair. . . . These people do not bury their dead, but place the body on a scaffold, wrapped in a buffalo robe, where it lies exposed. — Gass (p. 83).
cription will be given hereafter as also of the Town of Mandans on this side of the river i.e. S Side.

a fine warm Day we met with a frenchman by the name of Jessomme which we employ as an interpreter. This man has a wife & Children in the village. Great numbers on both Sides flocked down to the bank to view us as we passed. Cap' Lewis with the Interpet' walked down to the village below our camp. After delaying one hour he returned and informed me the Indians had returned to their village &c. &c., we sent three twists [carrots] of Tobacco by three young men, to the three villages above inviting them to come Down & Council with us tomorrow. many Indians came to view us. Some stayed all night in the Camp of our party. We procured some information of M' Jessomme of the Chiefs of the Different Nations

Course Distance 27°

West 2 Miles to a bend on the L. S. passing a Cole Bank
N. 10° W. 2 miles to a Wood on the S. S. pass the 2 village on S. S.

Sunday, 28th of October 1804 —

a windey Day, fair and clear many of the Grosvantres (or Big Bellies) and Watersones Came to See us and hear the Council the wind being So violently hard from the S.W. prevented our going into Council, (indeed the Chiefs of the Mandans from the lower village Could not Cross, we made up the presents and entertained Several of the Curious Chiefs whome, wished to see the Boat which was very curious to them viewing it as great medison, (whatever is mysterious or unintelligible is called great medicine) as they also Viewed my black Servent The Black Cat Grand Chief of the Mandans, Cap' Lewis & myself with an Interpeter walked up the river

1 Rene Jessume was originally a "free trader" (one to whom certain quantities of goods would be advanced by a trading company), and had spent many years among the Mandan. — Ed

2 An article indispensamble in those cases. — CLARK (memorandum on p. 123 of Codex C).

VOL. I. 14 [ 200 ]
about 1 1/2 miles our views were to examine the Situation & Timber for a fort, we found the Situation good but the Timber scarce, or at least Small timber such as would (not) answer us. We consulted the Grand Chief in respect to the other Chiefs of the Different Villages he gave the names of 12. George Drewyer caught 2 Beaver above our Camp last night, we had Several presents from the woman of Corn boil'd homney, Soft Corn &c &c. I present a jar (earth-then jar glazed) to the Chiefs wife who receved it with much pleasure. our men verry cheerfull this evening. We Sent the Chiefs of the Gross Vantres to Smoke a a pipe with the Grand Chef of the Mandans in his Village, & told them we would Speelc tomorrow.

29th October Monday 1804 —

a fair fine morning after Brackfast we were visited by the old Chief of the Big bellies or [blank space in MS.] this man was old and had transpired his power to his Sun, who was then out at War against the Snake Indians who inhabit the Rocky Mountains.\(^1\) at 10 oClock the S.W. wind rose verry high, we Collected the Chiefs and Commenced a Council ounder a arning, and our Sales Stretched around to keep out as much wind as possible, we delivered a long Speech the Substance of which [was] Similer to what we had Delivered to the nations below. the old Chief of the Grosvanters was verry restless before the Speech was half ended observed that he Could not wait long that his Camp was exposed to the hostile Indians, &c. &c. he was rebuked by one of the Chiefs for his uneasiness at Such a time as the present, we at the end of the Speech mentioned the Recare who accompanied us to make a firm Peace, they all Smoked with him (I gave this Chief a Dollar of the American Coin as a Meadl with which he was much pleased) In Council we presented him

\(^1\) The Shoshoni, commonly called Snake Indians; the principal tribes of the Shoshonean family. They originally occupied the region now included in southern Montana and Idaho and western Wyoming; but were later forced across the Rocky Mountains by hostile prairie tribes. — Ed.
with a certificate of his sincerity and good Conduct &c. We also Spoke about the fur which was taken from 2 frenchmen by a Mandan, and inform'd of our intentions of Sending back the french hands. After the Council we gave the presents with much serimony, and put the Meadels on the Chiefs we intended to make viz. one for each Town to whom we gave coats hats & flags, one Grand Chief to each nation to whom we gave meadels with the presidents likeness in Council we requested them to give us an answer tomorrow or as Soon as possible to Some Points which required their Deliberation, after the Council was over we Shot the air gun which appeared to astonish the natives much, the greater part then retired Soon after.

The Recare Cheaf Ar-ke-tar-na-shar came to me this evening and tells me that he wishes to return to his Village & nation, I put him off Saying tomorrow we would have an answer to our talk to the Satisfaction & send by him a String of Wompon informing what had passed here. a Iron or Steel Corn Mill which we gave to the Mandins, was very thankfully received. The Prairie was set on fire (or caught by accident) by a young man of the Mandins, the fire went with such velocity that it burnt to death a man & woman, who could not get to any place of Safety, one man a woman & Child much burnt and Several narrowly escaped the flame. a boy half white was saved unhurt in the midst of the flame, Those ignorant people say this boy was Saved by the Great Medison Speret because he was white. The cause of his being Saved was a Green buffalow Skin was thrown over him by his mother who perhaps had more fore Sight for the perfection of her Son, and [1]ess for herself than those who escaped the flame, the Fire did not burn under the Skin leaving the grass round the boy. This fire passed our Camp last [night] about 8 oClock P.M. it went with great rapitidity and looked Tremendous.

[211]
The following Chiefs were made in Council to day.

Ma-too-toon-ba or Lower Village of the Mandans

1st Chief Sha-ba-kâ — or Big White
2nd Chief Ka-geh-ba-mi — or Little Raven

Roe-py-ta-bi or Second Village of the Mandans.

1st and Grand Chief, Pose-cop-sa-he — or black cat
2nd Chief Car-gar-no-mok-she raven man Chief

Ma-ba-bar-ba 3rd Village

1st Chief Ta-tuck-co-pin-re-ha white Buffalo robe unfolded

Mi-te-bar-ran  Mi-te-bar-ran

1st Chief — Omp-ac-ba-râ, Black Mockerson
2nd do. Ob-barb — or Little fox

We Sent the presents intended for the Grand Chief of the Mi-te-bar-ran or Big Belley, and the presents flag and Wompom by the old Chief and those intended for the Chief of the Lower Village by a young Chief.

The following Chiefs were recommended in addition to those viz —

1st Village

Ob-hee-mar Big Man a Chien (a Cheyenne prisoner adopted by them)
Sho-ta-bar-re-ha 2 [or Coal — Biddle]

2nd Village

Taw-nuk-ee Bel-bar-sara
Ar-rat-tana-mek-she — Wolf man Chief

3rd Village

Min-nis-sur-ra-re — Neighing horse
Lo-Cong-gar-ta-bar — old woman at a distance

1 Brackenridge, who saw this chief in 1811, thus describes him (Louisiana, p. 261): "She-he-ke is a fat man, not much distinguished as a warrior, and extremely talkative, a fault much despised amongst the Indians." — Ed.

2 Biddle does not include this chief in his list. — Ed.
4th Village

Mar-nok-tah. the big Steeler out at war (who was then out at war was killed in it.)

Mar-no-ras-re — tale of Callumet bird

La pa na pa — Two tailed Callumet bird young Chief

War ke rii in The red Shield young Chief of Big belley — big town

5th Village

Shi-baka ke pen nee — Little Wolf Medison

At-ur-ta-ak-ta-ka-ke — man wolf Chief (at war)

Ca-lut-sa ta — cherry (grows growing) on a bush) old Chief and father to the above ment chief

Man-pah-lir-ra-ka-ri to — This chief is near this hunting and a very considerable man.

To the 1st Chiefs we gave a Medal with the Imp of the President of the U. S.

To the 2nd Chiefs a Medal of weaving & Domestic animals.

To the 3rd Chiefs a Medal with the impression of a man Sowing Wheat.

30th October Tuesday 1804 —

Two chiefs came to have Some talk one the principal of the lower Village the other the one who thought himself the principal man, & requested to hear Some of the Speech that was Delivered yesterday they were gratified, and we put the medal on the neck of the Big white to whom we had Sent Clothes yesterday & a flag, those men did not return from hunting in time to join the Council, they were well pleased (2 of those is a Chien). I took 8 men in a Small perogue and went up the river as far as the 1st Island about 7 miles to see if a Situation could be got on it for our Winter quarters, found the wood on the Is as also on the p' above so Distant from the water that, I did not think that we could get a good wintering ground there, and as all the white men here informed us that wood was scarce, as well as game above, we Determined to drop down a few miles near wood and game

1 Biddle does not include this chief in his list. — Ed.
Course to the Island

N. 12° W. 3 M to a Bluff 30 feet high above the point of wood. S.S.
N. 29° W. 2 M to a tree under the bank about 20 feet high. S.S.
but full plain
N. 35° W. 1½ M's. to a p' of the Same Bluff 30 feet high under which there was coal. S.S.
N. 45° W. 1½ M's. to the Lower point of an Island. Current on the S. S. this Is' ab' 1 mile long.

on my return found maney Ind' at our Camp, gave the party a dram, they Danced as is verry Com' in the evening which pleased the Savages much. Wind S. E.

31st of October Wednesday 1804—

a fine morning, the Chief of the Mandans Sent a 2d Chief to invite us to his Lodge to receive Som corn & here what he had to say. I walked down, and with great ceremoney was Seeted on a roabe by the Side of the Chief, he threw a handsom Roabe over me and after smokeing the pipe with Several old men around, the Chief spoke

Said he believed what we had told them, and that peace would be general, which not only gave him Satisfaction but all his people, they now could hunt without fear, & ther womin could work in the fields without looking every moment for the enemey, and put off their mockersons at night, (sign of peace undress) as to the Rit[ers] we will Show you that we wish peace with all, and do not make War on any without cause, that Chief— pointing to the 2d and Some brave men will accomp' the ricaré Chief now with you to his village & nation, to Smoke with that people, when you came up the Indians in the neighbouring Villages, as well as those out hunting when they heard of you had great expectations of receving presents those hunting imediately on hearing returned to the Village and all was Disappointed, and Some Dissatisfied, as to himself he was not much So but his village was. he would go and see his great father &c. &c.

he had put before me 2 of the Steel traps which was rob'd from the french a Short time ago, [and] about 12 bushels of
AT FORT MANDAN

Corn which was brought and put before me by the woman of the Village after the Chief finish & Smoked in great ceremony, I answered the Speech which Satisfied them very much, and returned to the boat. met the principal Chief of the 3rd Village and the Little Crow both of which I invited into the Cabin and Smoked & talked with for about one hour. Soon after those Chiefs left us, the Grand Chief of the Mandans came Dressed in the Clothes we had given with his 2 small Sons, and requested to See the men Dance which they very readily gratified him in, the wind blew hard all the after part of the day from the N. E. and continu'd all night to blow hard from that point, in the morning it Shifted NW. Capt Lewis wrote to the N. W. Companys agent on the Orsiniboine River (fort &c. there about 150 miles hence) abt' g Days march North of this place.

1st November. Thursday 1804 —

the Wind hard from the NW. M: M. Crackin a Trader Set out at 7 oClock to the Fort on the Ossiniboine by him Send a letter, (inclosing a Copy of the British Ministers protection) to the principal agent of the Company.1 at about 8 oClock the Chiefs of the Lower Village came and after a Short time informed us they wished they would us to [i.e., that we would — Ed.] call at their Village & take Some corn, [They said] that they would make peace with the Ricares they never made war against them but after the Rees killed their Chiefs they killed them like the birds, and were tired (of killing them) and would Send a Chief and Some brave men to the Ricares to Smoke with that people. in the evening we Set out and fell down to the lower Village where Capt Lewis got out and continu'd at the village untill after night 1 proceeded on & landed on the S. S. at the upper point of the 1st Timber on the Starboard Side after landing & continuing all night dropped

---

1 Coles reprints (i, pp. 187, 188) this letter, which he found in Biddle's literary magazine, *The Portfolio* (Philadelphia), vol. vii (1812), pp. 448, 449. The agent's name was Charles Chaboillez, representing the North West Company; Lewis and Clark wrote to him explaining the nature of their mission, and enclosing a copy of the passport granted them by Mr. Edward Thornton, of the British legation at Washington. — Ed.
down to a proper place to build. Cap'l Lewis came down after
night, and informed me he intended to return the next
morning by the particular request of the Chiefs.

We passed the Villages on our Decent in View of Great
numbers of the inhabitants.

2d November Friday 1804 —

This Morning at Daylight I went down the river with 4 men
to look for a proper place to winter, proceeded down the
erver three miles & found a place well supplied with wood, &
returned, Cap'l Lewis went to the Village to here what they
had to Say & I fell down, and formed a Camp, near where a
Small Camp of Indians were hunting cut down the Trees
around our Camp, in the evening Cap'l Lewis returned with
a present of 41 bushels of Corn, our icaree Chief Set out
accompanied by one Chief (of Mandans) and Several Brave
men (of Minitarees and Mandans), he called for Some small
article which we had given (promised) but as I could not
understand him he could not get [it] but he did get it) the
wind from the S. E. a fine day many Indians to view us to
tay.

3d of November Saturday 1804 —

a fine morning wind hard from the W'est we commence
building our Cabins,1 Send down in a perogue 6 men to hunt
engaged one man (a Canadian Frenchman who had been with
the Chayenne Ind. on the Cote noir & last summer descended thence
the Little Missouri — he was of our permanent.)2 Set the French
who intend to return to build a perogue, many Indians pass
to hunt, M' Jessomme (Jesseume) with his Squar & children
come down to live, as Interpreter, we received (hired) a
horse for our Service, in the evening the Kagogha me or
little ravin came & brought us on his Squar (who carried it on
of Meal &c. they Delayed all night we gave his Squar (an
her back) about 60 W of Dried Buffalo meat a robe, & Pot

1 A description of the manner in which the huts and fort were built is given by
Gass (pp. 85, 86). — Ed.
2 This was Baptiste Le Page, enlisted to take the place of John Newman, dis-
charged. — Ed.

[216]
a fine morning we continued to cut down trees and raise our houses, a Mr. Chaubonie (Chaboneau), interpreter for the Gross Ventre nation, came to see us, and informed that the came down with several Indians from a hunting expedition up the river, to here [bear] what we had told the Indians in Council. This man wished to hire as an interpreter, the wind rose this evening from the east & clouded up. Great numbers of Indians pass hunting and some on the return.

I rose very early and commenced raising the 2 range of huts, the timber large and heavy all to carry on on hand sticks, cotton wood & elm some ash small, our situation sandy, great numbers of Indians pass to and from hunting a camp of Mandans, a few miles below us caught within two days 100 Goats, by driving them in a strong pen, directed by a bush fence widening from the pen &c. &c. the greater part of this day cloudy, wind moderate from the N. W. I have the rhumitism very bad, Cap. Lewis writing all day we are told by our interpreter that 4 Ossiniboins Indians, have arrived at the camps of the Gross Venters, & 50 lodges are coming.

1 Fort Mandan, the wintering-place of the expedition, was located on the left bank of the Missouri, seven or eight miles below the mouth of Knife River; it was nearly opposite the site of the later Fort Clark. The latter post, "one of the most important on the river," was on the right bank; Chittenden says (Amer. Fur Trade, p. 957) that its area was 132 x 147 feet. On its site a fortified trading post was built in 1822; the latter structure, which was named Fort Clark, was erected in 1831, as a post of the American Fur Company. See description and history of this locality, in Prince Maximilian's Journey (Paris, 1841), ii, pp. 331-344.

2 Drew M. Gravelens' instructions & discharged 2 French hands.—Clark (memorandum on p. 222 of Codex C).
LEWIS AND CLARK JOURNALS  [Nov. 6

6th November Tuesday 1804 — Fort Mandan —

last night late we wer awoke by the Sergeant of the Guard to See a Northern light, which was light, (but) not red, and appeared to Darken and Some times nearly obscured, and open, (divided about 20 degrees above horizon various shapes — considerable space) many times appeared in light Streeks, and at other times a great Space light & containing floating columns which appeared to approach each other & retreat leaving the lighter space at no time of the Same appearance

This Morning I rose a\[t\] Day light the Clouds to the North appeared black at 8 oClock the [wind] began to blow hard from the N. W. and Cold, and Continued all Day M: Jo Gravelin our ricare interpeter Paul premor, Laguness, [Lajeuness] & 2 french Boys, who Came with us, Set out in a Small perogue, on their return to the recare nation & the Illinois, M: Gravelin has instructions to take on the recares in the Spring &c. Continue to build the huts, out of Cotton Timber, &c. this being the only timber we have,

6th November Wednesday 1804 —

a temperate day we continued to building our hut, cloudy and foggy all day

8th Nov. Thursday 1804 —

a cloudy morning Jussome our (Mandan) interpeter went to the Village, on his return he informed us that three English men had arrived from the Hudson Bay Company, and would be here tomorrow, we cont to build our huts, many Indians come to see us and bring their horses to Grass near us.

9th Nov. Friday 1804 —

a verry hard frost this morning we continue to build our Cabens, under many Disadvantages, Day cloudy wind from the NW. Several Indians pass with flying news (reports), we got a white weasel, (Taile excepted which was black at the end) of an Indian Cap' Lewis walked to the hill abt 3/4 of a mile, we are Situated in a point of the Missouri North Side in a Cotton wood Timber, this Timber is tall and heavy containing
an immense quantity of water Brittle (brittle) & Soft fine food for Horses to winter (as is said by the Indians) The Mandans Graze their horses in the Day on Grass, and at night give them a Stick (an arm full) of Cotton wood (boughs) to eate. Horses Dogs & people all pass the night in the Same Lodge or round House, Cov'd with earth with a fire in the middle. great number of wild gees pass to the South, flew very high.

10th November Saturday 1804. Fort Mandan

rose early continued to build our fort numbers of Indians came to see us a Chief Half Pania came & brought a Side of a Buffalow, in return We Gave Some few small things to himself & wife & Son, he crossed the river in the Buffalow Skin Canoo & and, the Squar took the Boat (on her back) and proceeded on to the Town 3 miles the Day raw and cold wind from the NW., the Gees Continue to pass in gangs as also brant to the South, Some Ducks also pass

11th November Sunday 1804. Fort Mandan

a cold Day continued at work at the Fort. Two men cut themselves with an ax, The large Ducks pass to the South an Indian gave me several roles of parched meat two Squars of the Rock mountains, purchased from the Indians by a frenchmen (Chaboneau) came down. The Mandans out hunting the Buffalow

12th November Monday 1804.

a very Cold night early this morning the Big White principal Chief of the lower Village of the Mandans came Down, he pack'd about 100 lbs. of fine meat on his squar for us, we made Some Small presents to the Squar, & child gave a Small ax [with] which She was much pleased 3 men Sick with the

1 These earth lodges of the Mandan differentiated them from the other Indians of the plains, and are described by all early travellers. See Maximilian, Prince of Wied's "Voyage in the Interior of North America" (London, 1843); Catlin's "North American Indians" (London, 1841); and Washington Matthews's "Earth Lodge in Art," in American Anthropologist, 1901, pp. 1-12. This lodge is the prototype of the settler's sod-house, but is seldom used now by the Mandan. For their present condition see Wheeler's "Wonderland," 1903, pp. 19-36. — Ed. [219]
[blank in MS.], Several, Wind Changeable very cold evening, freezing all day some ice on the edges of the river.

Swans passing to the South, the Hunters we Sent down the river to hunt has not returned

"The interpreter says that the Mandan nation as they (old men) Say came out of a Small lake (subterraneous Village & a lake) where they had Gardins, many years ago they lived in Several Villages on the Missouri low down, the Small pox destroyed the greater part of the nation and reduced them to one large village and Some Small ones, all the nations before this malady was affrighted (afraid) of them, after they were reduced the Saux and other Indians waged war, and killed a great many, and they moved up the Missouri, those Indians still continued to wage war, and they moved still higher, until got in the Countrie of the Panias, with this Na" they lived in friendship many years, inhabiting the Same neighbourhood until that people waged war, they moved up near the Watersoons & Winataries where they now live in peace with those nations, the Mandans Speake a language peculial to themselves very much [blank in MS.] they can raise about 350 men the Winataries about 80 (the Wittassoons or Maharha So) and the Big bellies (or Minitarees) about 600 or 650 men. the Mandans and Saux have the Same word for water. The Big bellies or Winetaries & ravin (Wattassoon as also the Crow or Raven) Indians Speake nearly the Same language and the presumption is they were orignionally the Same nation. The Raven Indians "have 400 Lodges & about 1200 men, & follow the Buffalo, or hunt for their Subsistance in the plains & on the Court Noi & Rock Mountains, & are at war with the Siaux [and] Snake Indians.

The Big bellies & Watersoons are at war with the Snake Indians & Sauxew and were at war with the Ricaries until we made peace a few days past. The Mandans are at war with all who make war [on them, at present with the Sauxew] only, and wish to be at peace with all nations, Seldom the agressors

1 See Maximilian's detailed account of the Mandan myths of the creation, their tribal origin, and their migrations, with their religious beliefs, superstitions, and customs, in his. Fissege, ii, pp. 369-484. — Ed.
The Ice began to run in the river 1/2 past 10 oClock P.M. we rose early & unloaded the boat before breakfast except, the Cabin, & stored away in a Store house at 10 oClock A.M. the Black Cat the Mandan Chief and Lagree (Fr. name) Che Chank a Chief & 7 men of note visited us at Fort Mandan, I gave him a twist of Tobacco to Smoke with his people & a Gold Cord, with a view to know him again, This nation consists (This chief was one of 3 bands of Ass' who live between the Missouri & Ass' river. The 3 consist) of about 600 men, hunt in the Plains & winter and trade on the Ossinboin River, (here describe all Ass'') they are the Decendants of the Sceaux and Speake their language, they come to the nations in this quarter to trade or (make presents) for horses 1 the Method of this Kind of Trafick by adoption Shall be explained hereafter etc., Snow'd all day, the Ice ran thick and air Cold.

14th of November Wednesday 1804. Fort Mandan —

a cloudy morning, Ice running very thick, river rose 1/2 Inch last night Some snow falling, only two Indians visit us to day owing to a Dance at the Village last night in Con-

1 La Verendrye, who visited the Mandan in 1738, thus speaks of their relations with their northern neighbors: "The Assilibois [Assinibois], although numerous, and strong and robust men, are not brave; they are in great fear of the Sioux, whom they regard as braver. The Mantannes [Mandan] know their weakness, and profit by [it] on occasion. . . . Public notice was given throughout the village, warning every one to be ready to march on the second day after, the 30th of the month; this made some further delay among the Mantannes, who knew well how to profit thereby in trading their grain, tobacco, peltries, and painted feathers, which they know the Assilibois highly value. The latter had brought, and were now giving in exchange, muskets, axes, kettles, powder, bullets, knives, and bodkins. The Mantannes are far more crafty in trade, and in all other relations, than are the Assilibois, who are constantly duped by them. . . . The Assilibois had purchased everything which their means permitted, such as painted buffalo-tubes; skins of deer and antelope well dressed, and ornamented with fur; bunches of painted feathers; peltries; wrought garters, head-dresses, and girdles. These people [the Mandan] dress leather better than do any other tribes, and do very fine work on furs and feathers, which the Assilibois are not capable of doing. They are cunning traders, despousing the Assilibois of all that they may possess." — See his "Journal," in Canad. Archives Rep., 1889, p. 14. — Ed.
including a serimoney of adoption, and interchange of property, between the Ossinboins, Christinoes (Knistenaux) and the nations of this neighbourhood. We sent one man by land on horseback to know the reason of the Delay of our hunters, this evening 2 Frenchmen who were traping below came up with 20 beaver. We are compelled to use our pork which we doe Spearingly for fear of some falur in precureing a Sufficiency from the woods.

Our Interpreter informs that 70 Lodges one of 3 bands of Assiniboin & Some Crestinoes are at the Mandan Village. The Crestinoes are abt 300 (240) men speak the Chipaway Language, the [y] live near Fort De prari (on Assiniboin & Assaskashawan [Saskatchewan — Ed.] they are bands of the Chippeways)

15th of November Thursday 1804 —

A cloudy morning, the ice run much thicker than yesterday. At 10 oClock G Drewyer & the Frenchman we Dispatched yesterday came up from the Hunters, who is incamped about 30 miles below. After about one hour we Dispatched a man with orders to the hunters to proceed on without Delay thro the floating ice, we sent by the man Tin, to put on the parts of the Perogue exposed to the ice & a toe rope. The wind Changeable all hands work at their huts untill 1 oClock at night. Swans passing to the South — but few fowls (water) to be seen not one Indian came to our fort to day

---

1 The ceremony of adoption into a tribe or family is one which has always prevailed among the North American aborigines, and is extended to any persons (red or white) to whom they wish to show special friendship or honor. See Henry's description of the ceremony (Journal, 2, pp. 388-390). — Ed.

2 The savages now known as Cree, the appellation of various nomadic tribes who range the region north of Lake Superior and west toward the Assiniboin River; they are of Algonquin stock. — Ed.

3 George Drouillard (Drewyer) was son of Pierre Drouillard, an interpreter for the British at Detroit in the latter part of the eighteenth century. The father is said to have rescued Simon Kenton from death at the stake (about 1779). George was slain (May, 1810) in a fight with the Blackfeet. — Ed.
a verry white frost all the trees all covered with ice, cloudy, all the men move into the huts which is not finish. Several Indians come to camp to day, The Ossinboins is at the Big bellie Camp, some trouble like to take place between them from the loss of horses &c. as is Said by an old Indian who visited us with 4 Buffalow robes & corn to trade for a Pistol which we did not let him have, men imploied untill late in doeing their huts, Some horses Sent down to Stay in the woods near the fort, to prevent the Ossinboins Steeling them.

---

a fine morning, last night was Cold, the ice thicker than yesterday, Several Indians visit us, one Chief Stayed all day we are much engaged about our huts.

---

a cold morning Some wind the Black Cat, Chief of the Mandans came to see us, he made great inquiries respecting our fashions, he also Stated the Situation of their nation, he mentioned that a Council had been held the day before and it was thought advisable to put up with the resent insults of the Ossinboins & Christinoes untill they were convinced that what had been told them by us [was true — En.], Mr: Evins had deceived them & we might also, he promised to return & furnish them with guns & ammunition, we advised them to remain at peace & that they might depend upon Getting Supplies through the Channel of the Misourie, but it required time to put the trade in opperation. The Ossinboins &c. have the trade of those nations in their power and treat them badly, as the Soux does the Ricarees, and they cannot resent, for fear of losing their trade.

---

1 That is, "daubing" with clay. — En.
2 Biddle adds: "By their vicinity to the British [at Hudson Bay] they get all the supplies, which they withhold or give at pleasure to the remoter Indians." — En.
a Cold day the ice continue to run our Perogue of Hunters arrive with 32 Deer, 12 Elk & a Buffalow, all of this meat we had hung up in a Smoke house, a timeley supply. Several Indians here all day. the wind blew hard from the N.W. by W. our men move into their huts, Several little Indian anecdotes told me to day

20th November Tuesday 1804 —

Cap Lewis & my Self move into our hut, a very hard wind from the W. all the after part of the day a temperate day. Several Indians came Down to Eat fresh meat, three Chiefs from the 2d Mandan Village Stay all Day, they are very Curious in examining our works. Those Chiefs informs us that the Soucx settled on the Missourie above Dog (Chayenne) River, threten to attacked them this winter, and have treated 2 Ricares who carried the pipe of peace to them verry roughly, whiped & took their horses from them &c. &c. & is much displeased with the Ricares for makeing a peace with the Mandans &c. &c. through us, we gave them a Sattisfactory answer. &c. &c.

21st Nov. Wednesday —

a fine Day despatched a perogue and collected stone for our Chimneys, Some wind from the S.W. arrange our different articles. Maney Indians visit us to day, G D hurd his hand verry hard all the party in high Spirits. The river Clear of ice, & riseing a little.

1 Biddle here describes (i, pp. 128, 129) the fort, much as Gass does. — Ed.
2 At this point Biddle describes (i, pp. 129-132) the location, history, and mutual relations of the tribes about Fort Mandan. There are five villages, "the residence of three distinct nations: the Mandans, the Ahnahaways, and the Minnetarees." The Mandan may number about 350 warriors. The Ahnahaway ("people whose village is on a hill") live at the mouth of Knife River, in a village called Mahaha; they are called by the French, Soulier Noir or Shoe Indians, by the Mandans Wattasoons; and their whole force is about fifty men. Half a mile above Mahaha on the Knife River is a village of the Minnetaree surnamed Metaharta ("of the willows"), numbering 150 warriors; and farther up that stream is another, of the Minnetaree proper, who have 450 men. These Minnetarees are part of the great
a fine morning Dispatched a perogue and 5 men under the 
Depection of Serjeant Pryor to the 2d Village for 100 bushels 
of Corn in ears which M. Jessomme, let us have [did not get 
more than 30 bushels]. I was allarmed about 10 oClock by 
the Sentinal, who informed that an Indian was about to kill 
his wife in the interpreters fire about 60 yards below the works, 
I went down and Spoke to the fellow about the rash act which 
he was like to commit and forbid any act of the kind near the 
fort. Some misunderstanding took place between this man & 
his fire [wife] about 8 days ago, and she came to this place, 
& continued with the Squars of the interpreters, (he might law-
fully have killed her for running away) 2 days ago. She re-
turned to the village in the evening of the Same day she 
came to the interpreters fire apparently much beat, & Stabed 
in 3 places. We Depected that no man of this party have 
any intercourse with this woman under the penalty of Punish-
ment. he the Husband observed that one of our Serjeants 
Slept with his wife & if he wanted her he would give her to 
him, We depected the Serjeant (Odway) to give the man 
Some articles, at which time I told the Indian that I believed 
not one man of the party had touched his wife except the one 
he had given the use of her for a nite, in his own bed, no 
man of the party Should touch his squar, or the wife of any 
Indian, nor did I believe they touch a woman if they knew 
her to be the wife of another man. and advised him to take his 
squar home and live happily together in future, at this time 
the Grand Chief of the nation arrived, & lectured him, and 
they both went off apparently dissatisfied.

---

nation called Fall Indians, who occupy the intermediate country between the Mis-
souri and the Saskaewan. The name of Grosventres, or Bigbellies, is given to 
these Minetarees, as well as to all the Fall Indians." Mooney says (C. S. Bar. 
Ethnol. Ref., 1892-93, p. 954) that Grosventres signifies "belly-people" (i. e., 
grasping and selfish, "spongers") ; that the Arapah division of that name are the 
"Gros Ventres of the Prairie" ; while the Hidatsa or Minetaree with whom Lewis 
and Clark wintered, are sometimes called "Gros Ventres of the Missouri." See 
Valuable information regarding all these tribes is given by Washington Matthews, in 
his Ethnography and Philology of the Hidatasa Indians. — En. 

---

VOL. I. — 15 [ 225 ]
The Grand Chief continued (with us) all day, a warm Day, fair afternoon, many Indian anecdotes our Chief & his family stay all night.

23rd —

a fair warm Day, wind from the S.E. Send after Stone several men with bad colds, one man Shields with the Rhumatism the river on a Stand having rose 4 inches in all.

24th of November Saturday 1804 —

a warm Day Several men with bad colds we continued to cover our Huts with hewed Punchins, finish a Cord to draw our boat out on the bank, this is made of 9 strans of Elk Skin, the wind from the S.E.

25th of Nov. Sunday 1804 —

a fine day warm & pleasant Cap' Lewis 2 Interpers & 6 men Set out to see the Indians in the different Towns & camps in this neighbourhood, we Continu to cover & dob our huts, two Chiefs came to See me to day one named Wa-ke-res-sa-ra, a Big belley, and the first of that Nation who has Visited us Since we have been here, I gave him a handkerchief Paint & a lace band, and the other Some fiew articles, and paid a perricular attention which pleased them very much, the inturpers being all with Cap' Lewis I could not talk to them. We Compleated our huts. Several men with bad Colds, river falls 1½ inch

[Memorandum on p. 221 of this Codex:] Capt. Lewis with Chabono & Jessomme set out to visit the Indian hunting camps, Spent the evening with the black mockerson, the principal Chief of the little village of Big billies.

26th of Nov. 1804 Monday Fort Mandan —

a little before day light the wind shifted to the N.W. and blew hard and the air keen & cold all day, Cloudy and much the appearance of Snow; but little work done to day it being cold &c.

1 The "puncheons" used in pioneer architecture were simply logs hewn on one side, so as to form a tolerably level surface for floor or ceiling. — Ed.
[Memorandum, p. 220:] Visited the upper camps of the big bellies and returned to the lower Camp & passed a second night.

29th November Tuesday 1804 —

A cloudy morning after a very cold night, the River crowded with floating ice. Wind from the NW. finished Doling Cap' Lewis returned from the Villages with two Chiefs Mar-noh-toh & Man-nass-surree & a considerable [considerable] man with the party who accompanied him. The Menetaries, (or Big bellies) were allarmed at the tales told them by the Mandans viz: that we intended to join the Sioux to cut off them in the course of the Winter. Many circumstances Combin'd to give force to those reports i.e., the movements of the interpreters & their families to the Fort, the strength of our work &c. &c. all those reports was contradicted by Cap' Lewis with a conviction on the minds of the Indians of the falsity of those reports. The Indians in all the towns & Camps treated Cap' Lewis & the party with great respect, except one of the principal Chiefs Mar-par-pa-parrapa-pa-to too or (Horned Weasel) who did not chuse to be seen by the Cap' & left word that he was not at home &c. Seven Traders arrived from the fort on the Ossiniboon from the NW. Company one of which Lafrance took upon himself to speak unfavourably of our intentions &c. The principal Mr. La Rock (Mr. M' Kensey) was informed of the conduct of their interpreter & the consequences if they did not put a stop to unfavourable & ill founded assurances &c. &c.1

1 The names of these traders were: Francois Antoine Larocque (in charge of this trading expedition), Charles McKenzie, Baptiste Lafrance, and four voyageurs. The journals of both Larocque and McKenzie have been published by L. R. Masson, in his *Bougeau de la Compagnie du Nord-Ouest* (Quebec, 1889), i, pp. 299–313; they mention their relations with Lewis and Clark, near whom they remained during that winter. Larocque describes the objects and policy of the Americans, and says: "During the time I was there a very grand plan was schemed, but it's being realized is more than I can tell, although the Captains say they are well assured it will. . . . The fort is made so strong as to be almost cannon-ball proof. . . . They have a very expert smith who is always employed making different things, and working for the Indians, who are grown very fond of them, although they disliked them at first." But McKenzie says: "The Indians accepted of clothing, but, notwithstanding, they could not be reconciled to like these 'strangers,' as they called them." — Ed.

[ 227 ]
The two Chiefs much pleased with their treatment & the Cherefulness of the party, who Danced to amuse them &c. &c.
The river fall 2 Inches very Cold and began to Snow at 8 oClock PM and continued all night. Some miss understanding with Jussomme⁴ & his woman at Day the Snow ceased.

28th November Wednesday 1804 —

A cold morning wind from the N.W. river full of floating ice, began to Snow at 7 oClock a.m. and continued all day at 8 oClock the Poss-coo-so-he or Black Cat Grand Chief of the Mandans Came to See us, after showing those Chiefs many thing[s] which was Curiosities to them, and Gieveing a new presents [sic] of Curious handkerchies arm ban[d]s & paint with a twist of Tobacco they departed at 1 oClock much pleased, at parting we had some little talk on the Subject of the British Trader M. Le rock Gieving meadels & Flags, and told those Chiefs to impress it on the minds of their nations that those simbiles were not to be receaved by any from them, without they wished [to] incur the displeasure of their Great American Father. a very disagreeable day no work done to day river fall 1 Inch to day.

29th November Thursday 1804 —

A very cold windey day wind from the N.W. by W. Some snow last night the depth of the Snow is various in the wood about 13 inches, The river Closed at the Village above and fell last night two feet, M' Lat Rock and one of his men Came to visit us, we informed him what we had herd of his intentions of making Chiefs &c. and forbid him to give Meadels or flags to the Indians, he Denied having any such intention, we agreed that one of our interpeters Should

---

¹ Alexander Henry thus characterizes Jusseaume (Journal, Cones ed., N. Y., 1897, i. p. 401) : "that old sneaking cheat, whose character is more despicable than the worst among the natives." — Ed.
Speak for him on Conditions he did not say anything more than what tended to trade alone. he gave fair promises &c.

Sergeant Pryor in taking down the mast put his Shoulder out of Place, we made four trials before we replaced it, a cold afternoon wind as usual N W. river begin to rise a little.

This morning at 8 oClock an Indian called from the other Side and informed that he had Something of Consequence to Communicate, we Sent a perogue for him & he informed us as follows, Viz: " five men of the Mandan nation out hunting in a S.W. direction about Eight Leagues, was Suprised by a large party of Secoux & Panies, one man was Killed and two wounded with arrows & 9 Horses taken, 4 of the We ter soon nation was missing, and they expected to be attacked by the Soutex &c. &c. we thought it well to Show a Disposition to ade and assist them against their enemies, particularly those who Came in oppersition to our Councils; and I Determined to go to the town with Some men, and if the Secoux were coming to attack the Nation to Collect the worriers from each Village and meet them, those Ideas were also those of Cap' Lewis, I crossed the river in about an hour after the arrival of the Indian express with 23 men including the interpeters and flank the Town & came up on the back part. The Indians not expecting to receive Such Strong aide in So Short a time was much suprised, and a little allarmed at the formidable apperance of my party. The principal Chiefs met me Some Distance from the town (say 200 yards) and invited me in to town. I ord[ered] my pinto dif lodges

1 Laroque gives the same account (Masson's Boureg. Nord. Owen. 2 p. 324), and adds: " As I had neither flags nor medals, I ran no risk of disobeying those orders, of which I assured them." The interpreter lent to the British was Charboneau. McKenzie thus describes (at infra, p. 326) the method of Lewis and Clark's communication with the Indians: "A mulatto, who spoke bad French and worse English, served as interpreter to the Captains, so that a single word to be understood by the party required to pass from the Natives to the woman [Sacajawea, Indian wife of Charboneau, who could not speak English], from the woman to the husband, from the husband to the mulatto, from the mulatto to the captains." — Ed.
&c. I explained to the nation the cause of my coming in this formidable manner to their Town, was to assist and Chastise the enemies of our Dutifull Children, I requested the Grand Cheif to repeat the Circumstances as they hapned, which he did as was mentioned by the express in the morning. I then informed them that if they would assemble their warriers and those of the Different Towns, I would [go] to meet the Army of Sauex &c. chastise them for taking the blood of our dutifull Children &c. after a conversation of a few minutes amongst themselves, one Chief. the Big Man (Cien) (a Chay- come). Said they now Saw that what we hade told them was the trooth, when we expected the enemies of their Nation was coming to attact them, or had Spilt their blood [we] were ready to protect them, and kill those who would not listen to our Good talk. his people had listened to what we had told them and earlessly went out to hunt in Small parties believing themselves to be Safe from the other nations, and have been killed by the Paines & Sauex, "I knew Said he that the Paines were liers, and told the old Chief who Came with you (to Confirm a piece with us) that his people were liers and bad men and that we killed them like the Buffalow, when we pleased, we had made peace several times and you Nation have always commenced the war, we do not want to kill you, and will not Suffer you to kill us or Steal our horses, we will make peace with you as our two fathers have directed, and they Shall See that we will not be the Ogressors, but we fear the Ricares will not be at peace long. "My father those are the words I spoke to the Ricare in your presents. you see they have not opened their ears to your good Councils but have Spuilt our blood." two Ricaries whom we sent home this day for fear of our peoples Killing them in their great, informed us when they came here Several days ago, that two Towns of the Ricares were making their Mockersons, and that we had best take care of our horses &c." a numbers of Sauex were in their Towns, and they believed not well disposed towards us. four of the Wetersoons are now absent they were to have been back in 16 days, they have been out 24 we fear they have fallen. My father the Snow is deep [230]
and it is cold our horses Cannot travel thro the plains, those people who have Spilt our blood have gone back? If you will go with us in the Spring after the Snow goes off we will raise the wariers of all the Towns & Nations around about us, and go with you."

I told this nation that we should be always willing and ready to defend them from the insults of any nation who would dare to Come to doe them injury dureing the time we would remain in their neighbourhood, and request that they would inform us of any party who may at any time be discovered by their Patroles or Scouts; I was sorry that the snow in the Plains had fallen so Deep Sence the Murder of the young Chief by the Secoons as prevented their horses from traveling. I wished to meet those Secoons & all others who will not open their ears, but make war on our dutifull Children, and let you see that the Wariers of your Great father will chastize the enimies of his dutifull Children the Mandans, Wetersoons & Winetarees, who have open their ears to his advice. you say that the Panies or Ricaires were with the Secaux, some bad men may have been with the Secaux you know there is bad men in all nations, do not get mad with the ricaires untill we know if those bad men are Counterned by their nation, and we are convic'd those people do not intend to follow our Councils. You know that the Secaux have great influence over the ricaires, and perhaps have led Some of them astray you know that the Ricaires, are Dependant on the Secaux for their guns, powder, & Ball, and it was policy in them to keep on as good terms as possible with the Secaux untill they had Some other means of getting those articles &c. &c. You know yourselves that you are compelled to put up with little insults from the Christian & Osanabons (or Stone Ind.) because if you go to war with those people, they will prevent the traders in the North from bringing you Guns, Powder & Ball and by that means distress you very much, but whin you will have certain Supplies from your Great American father of all those articles you will not Suffer any nation to insult you &c. after about two hours conversation on various Subjects all of which tended towards their
Situation &c. I informed them I should return to the fort, the Chief said they all thanked me very much for the fatherly protection which I shewed towards them, that the village had been crying all the night and day for the death of the brave young man, who fell but now they would wipe away their tears, and rejoice in their fathers protection, and cry no more.

I then Paraded & Crossed the river on the ice and Came down on the N. Side, the Snow So Deep, it was very fatiguing—arrived at the fort after night, gave a little Taffee to my party, a cold night the river rise to its former hite. The Chief frequently thanked me for coming to protect them—and the whole village appeared thankful for that measure

1st of December Saturday 1804—

Wind from the NW. all hands engaged in getting pickets &c. at 10 oClock the half brother of the man who was killed came & informed us that after my departure last night Six Chians so called by the French or Shar ha Indians had arrived with a pipe and said that their nation was at one day's march and intended to come & trade &c. three Panies had also arrived from the nation, (their nation was then within 3 days march & were coming on to trade with us Three Pawnees accompanied these Chayennes) The Mandans call all ricaras Pawnees don't use the name of ric but the ric call themselves Rics) The Mandans apprehended danger from the Shar has as they were at peace with the Seaux; and wished to Kill them and the Ricaries (or panies) but the Chiefs informed the nation it was our wish that they Should not be hurt, and forbid their being killed &c." We gave a little Tobacco &c. & this man Departed well satisfied with our Councils and advice to him.

in the evening a M' G Henderson [arrived — Ed.] in the imploy of the hudsons bay Company sent to trade with the Gros ventre, or Big bellies so called by the french traders

1 A corruption of "tafia," defined as "an inferior kind of rum, distilled from sugar refuse or from coarse molasses." Coues (L. and C., p. 216) asserts that this is "a Malay word which we get from the French by way of the West Indies. We call this liquor Jamaica." — Ed.
The latter part of last night was very warm and continued to thaw until [blank in MS.] o’clock when the wind shifted to the North at 11 o’clock the Chiefs of the Lower Village of the Mandans [came] with many of their young men and 4 of the Shar-ha’s who had come to Smoke with the pipe of Peace with the Mandans, we explained to them our intentions our views and advised them to be at peace. Gave them a flag for their nation. Some Tobacco with a Speech to Dilever to their nation on their return, also sent by them a letter to Mr. Tabbo & Gravoline, at the Ricasres village, to intercede in preventing Hostilities, and if they could not effect those measures to send & inform us of what was going on. Stating to the Indians the part we intend to take if the Rickores & Seaux did not follow our Directions and be at peace with the nations which we had adopted. We made some few small presents to those Shar-ha’s and also some to the Mandans & at 3 o’clock they all departed well pleased, having seen many Curiosities, which we showed them.

River rise one inch

3rd December Monday 1804 —

A fine morning the after part of the day cold & windly the wind from the NW. the Father of the Mandan who was killed came and made us a present of some Dried Simms (Pumpkins) & a little pimecon, (pemitigon) we made him some small presents for which he was much pleased.

4th December Tuesday 1804 —

A cloudy raw day wind from the N.W. the Black cat and two young Chiefs visit us and as usual stay all day. The river rise one inch finis[es] the main bastion, our interpreter (jes-saume) we discover to be assuming and discontent'd.

1 Biddle here makes a brief statement of the religious belief and origin-myth of the Mandan; cf. therewith Catlin’s Illust. N. Amer. Inds. (London, 1866), i, pp. 155, 156, 157, 177-183, and Maximilian’s Voyage, ii, pp. 418-436. — Ed.
December Wednesday — 1804

A cold raw morning wind from the S.E. Some Snow, two of the NW. Company came to see us, to let us know they intended to set out for the establishment on the Ossinniboin River in two Days, & their party would consist of 5 men, several Indians also visited us one brought Pumpkins or Simmins as a present. A little Snow fell in the evening at which time the wind shifted round to N.E.

December Thursday — 1804

Fort Mandan —

The wind blew violently hard from the N.N.W. with some Snow the air keen and cold. The Thermometer at 8 oClock A.M. stood at 10dg° above 0. at 9 oClock a man & his squaw came down with some meat for the Interpreter his dress was a pair mockersons of Buffalo Skin & P. Legins of Goat Skin & a Buffalo robe, 14 ring of Brass on his fingers, this Metal (ornament) the Mandans are very fond of. Cold after noon, River rise 1 1/2 Inch to day.

[Memorandum, p. 220] Cap' Clark set out with a hunting party, killed 8 Buffalo & returned next day.

December Friday — 1804

A very cold day wind from the NW. The Big White Grand Chief of the 1st Village, came and informed us that a large Drove of Buffalo was near and his people was waiting for us to join them in a chase. Cap' Lewis took 15 men & went out joined the Indians, who were at the time he got up, killing the Buffalo on Horseback with arrows which they done with great dexterity, his party killed 10 Buffalo, five of which we got to the fort by the assistance of a horse in addition to what the men packed on their backs, one cow was killed on the ice after drawing her out of a vacancy in the ice in which she had fallen, and butchered her at the fort. Those we did

1 Biddle gives (p. 149) a more detailed account of the Indians' buffalo hunt. Gass says (p. 89) that Lewis took eleven men with him, who killed 11 buffalo, while the Indians killed 30 or 40. — Ed.
not get in was taken by the Indians under a Custom which is established amongst them i.e. any person seeing a buffalo lying without an arrow sticking in him, or some particular mark takes possession, many times (as I am told) a Hunter who kills many Buffalow in a chase only gets a part of one, all meat which is left out all night falls to the Wolves which are in great numbers, always in [the neighborhood of — Ed.] the Buffalows. the river Closed opposite the fort last night 1\(^{1/2}\) inches thick, The Thermometer Stood this Morning at 1 d. below \(\circ\). three men frost bit badly to day.

8th. December Saturday 1804 —

a verry Cold morning, the Thermometer Stood at 12\(^{1/2}\) below \(\circ\) which is 42\(^{1/2}\) below the Freezing point, wind from the NW, I with 15 men turned out (Indians joined us on horseback shot with arrows rode along side of Buffalow) and killed 8 buffalow & one Deer, one Cow and calf was brought in, two Cows which I killed at 7 miles Ds' I left 2 men to Skin & keep off the Wolves, and brought in one cow & a calf, in the evening on my return to the fort Saw great numbers of Buffalow Coming into the Bottom on both Sides of the river this day being Cold Several men returned a little frost bit, one of [the] men with his feet badly frost bit my Servents feet also frost bit & his P——s a little, I felt a little fatigued haveing run after the Buffalow all day in Snow many Places 18 inches Deep, generally 6 or 8, two men hurt their hips verry much in Slipping down. The Indians kill great numbers of Buffalow to day. 2 reflectings Suns to day.

9th. December Sunday 1804 —

The Thermometer Stood this morning at 7 above \(\circ\), wind from the E. Cap: Lewis took 18 men & 4 horses (3 hired & bought) and went out [to] Send in the meat killed yesterday and kill more, the Sun Shown to day Clear, both interpreters went to the Villages to day at 12 o'Clock two Chiefs came loaded with meat, one with a dog & Slay also loaded with meat, Cap: Lewis Sent 4 Hors's loaded with meat, he continued at the hunting Camp near which the[5] killed 9 buffalow.
10th Monday Dec. 1804 Fort Mandan —

a very Cold Day. The Thermometer to day at 10 & 11 Degrees, below 0. Cap Lewis returned, to day at 12 oClock leaveing 6 Men at the Camp to prepare the meat for to pack 4 Horse loads came in. Cap Lewis had a Cold Disagreeable night last in the Snow on a Cold point with one Small Blankett, the Buffalow crossed the river below in immense herds without braking in. only 2 Buffalow killed to day one of which was too pore to Skin, The men which was frost bit is getting better. the [river] rise 1½ inch wind North.

11th December Tuesday 1804 —

a very Cold morning Wind from the north. The Thermometer at 4 oClock A M. at 21. [Sunrise at 21. see list] below 0 which is 53 below the freezing point and getting colder, the Sun Shows and reflects two images, the ice floating in the atmospear being So thick that the appearance is like a fog Despurceing.

Sent out three horses for meat & with Directons for all the hunters to return to the fort as Soon as possible at 1 oClock the horses returned loaded, at night all the hunters returned, Several a little frosted, The Black Cat Chief of the Mandans paid us a Visit to day, continue Cold all day river at a Stand.

12th December Wednesday 1804 —

a Clear Cold morning Wind from the north the Thermometer at Sun rise Stood at 38 below 0, moderated untill 6 oClock at which time it began to get Colder. I line my Gloves and have a Cap made of the Skin of the Louserzia² (Lynx) (or wild Cat of the North) the fur near 3 inches long, a Indian of the Shoe³ (Maharha or Moccassin) Nation Came with the half

---

1 An experiment was made with proof spirits, which in fifteen minutes froze into hard ice. — Gass (p. 90).
2 A corruption of the French loup-serveur, the common name of the Canada lynx (Lynx canadensis). — Ed.
3 Merely an Anglicized form of the French appellation Gens de Soulier, applied to the Ahmahaway (see p. 208, note 2, ante). — Ed.
of a *Cabra ko ka* or Antelope which he killed near the Fort. Great numbers of those animals are near our fort (so that they do not all return to rock mountain Goat) but the weather is so Cold that we do not think it prudent to turn out to hunt in such Cold weather, or at least until our Const are prepared to undergo this Climate. I measure the river from bank to bank on the ice and make it 500 yards.

*15* December Thursday 1804 —

The last night was very Clear & the frost which fell covered the ice old Snow & those parts which was naked ¼ of an inch. The Thermometer Stands this morning at 20 below 0, a fine day. Find it impossible to make an Observation with an artificial Heron. Joseph Fields kill a Cow and Calf to day, one mile from the Fort. River fall.

*16* December Friday 1804 —

A fine Morning, wind from the S. E. the Murckerey Stood at 0 this morning I went with a party of men down the river 18 miles † to hunt Buffalow. Saw two Bulls too pore to kill, the Cows and large gangues having left the River, we only killed two Deer & Camped all night with some expectation of seeing the Buffalow in the morning, a very Cold night, Snowed.

*16* of December 1804 Saturday —

A Cold Clear morning, Saw no Buffalow, I concluded to return to the fort & hunt on each Side of the river on our return which we did without Success. The Snow fell 1½ inches deep last night. Wind North. On my return to the fort found several Chiefs there.

*16* of December Sunday 1804 —

A clear Cold morning, the Therm‘ at Sun rise Stood at 22. below 0, a very singular appearance of the Moon last night, as She appeared thro‘ the frosty atmosphere. Mr. Henry from the Establishment on River Ossinniboin, with a letter from,

---

† "On the ice with Slays," according to a memorandum on p. 220 of this Codex. — Ed.
LEWIS AND CLARK JOURNALS  [Dec. 17

M. Charles Chabooiliez one of the C. arrived in 6 Days, Mr. C. in his letter expressed a great anxiety to Serve us in any thing in his power.

a root Described by M. Henny for the Cure of a Mad Dog [blank in MS. — Ed.]

M. LeRock a clerk, of the NW. Company and M. George Bunch a Clerk of the Hudsons heey Compy accompanied M. Henry from the village.

17th December Monday 1804 —

a verry Cold morning the Thmt. Stood a[t] 45 below o. We found Mr. Henny a Verry intelligent Man from home we obtained Some Scetches of the Countrey between the Mississippi & Missouri, and Some Scetches from him, which he had obtained from the Indin to the West of this place also the names and charecktors of the Seeaux &c. about 8 oClock P M. the thermometer fell to 74 below the freesing pointe. the Indian Chiefs Sent word that Buffalow was in our Neighbourhood, and if we would join them, in the morning they would go and kill them.

18th December Tuesday 1804 —

The Themometer the same as last night M" Haney & La Rocke left us for the Grossventre Camp, Sent out 7 men to hunt for the Buffalow they found the weather too cold & returned, Several Indians Came, who had Set out with a View to Kill buffalow, The river rise a little I impoy my Self making a Small Map of Connexion &c. Sent Jessomme to the Main Chief of the mandans to know the Cause of his

1 This post, according to Coues (Henry's journal, i, p. 298) was called Fort Montagne a la Bosse, situated on the Assiniboine about 50 miles above Mouse River, The messenger's name appears in the L. and C. MSS. as Henny,亨尼 and Haney. His real name was Hugh Henney, a trader for the Hudson's Bay Company. Larocque mentions his arrival (Masson's Envoy. Nord-Ouest, i, p. 307). Mrs. E. E. Dye cites to the Editor from a MS. journal of a Hudson's Bay Company trader (1812-16) the additional fact that he was head of the Pembina and Red River (of the North) district as late as 1813, when he was superseded by Peter Fuller, with whose earlier exploration Lewis and Clark were acquainted. — En.

2 The object of the visits we received from the N. W. Company, was to ascertain our motives for visiting that country, and to gain information with respect to the change of government. — Gass (p. 92).
24th December Monday 1804

Accurate Chief and Members of Men Women and Children at this fort to Day, some for (say) 100 more as London (\r\n\r\n) we gave the jellit of Shells none (what we brought for sewing) to 3 chiefs one to each of \r\r\n2 each hundred which (the my great valued Private) these fort (equal) to a send 12 none, a gane day we finished the pelugen rounds our works

35th December Tuesday 1804

We are workmen before Day by a discharge of 8 peacocks from the Fort and the arming the men (ferry) this fort (fire) I gave them all a little after and promised 3 (Cannon fired early \r\n\r\n) some men went out to hunt of the others to London \r\n\r\nand continued until pelugen the 12 send none to

MS. Page, by Clark, dated December 24, 1804.
detaining or taking a horse of Chabonat our big belly interpreter, which we found was thro: the rascallity of one Latrance a trader from the NW. Company, who told this Chief that Chabonat ow'd him a horse to go and take him he done So agreeable to an Indian Custom. he gave up the horse.

The Wind from the S.W. the weather moderated a little, I engage my self in Connecting the country from information. river rise a little.

The wind from the NW a moderate day, the Thermometer 37° (24°) above 0, which gives an opportunity of putting up our pickets next the river, nothing remarkable took place to Day river fall a little.

A fine Day warm and wind from the NW by W, the Indian whome I stoped from Commiting Murder on his wife, thro' jealousy of one of our interpreters, Came & brought his two wives and Shewed great anxiety to make up with the man with whome his jalousy Sprung: a Woman brought a Child with an abscess on the lower part of the back, and offered as much Corn as she Could Carry for some Medicine, Cap' Lewis administered &c.

A worm, a number of Squars & men Dressed in Squars Clothes Came with Corn to Sell to the men for little things, We precured two horns of the animale the French Call the...
rock Mountain Sheep those horns are not of the largest kind
The Mandans Indians Call this Sheep Ar-Sar-ta it is about
the Size of a large Deer, or Small Elk, its Horns Come out
and wind around the head like the horn of a Ram and the
tecture (texture) not unlike it much larger and thicker, per-
ticularly that part with which they but[.] or outer part which
is [blank in MS.] inches thick, the length of those horns,
which we have is [blank in MS.]

23rd December Sunday 1804 —

a fine Day great numbers of indians of all discriptions
Came to the fort many of them bringing Corn to trade, the
little Crow, load his wife & Sun with Corn for us, Cap.
Lewis gave him a few presents as also his wife, She made a
kittle of boiled Cimnins, beens, Corn & Choke Cherries with
the Stones, which was palitable This Desh is Considered, as
a treat among those people, the Chiefs of the Mandans are
fond of stayin' & Sleeping in the fort.

24th December Monday 1804 —

Several Chiefs and numbers of Men Womin and Children
at the fort to Day, Some for trade, the most as lookers on,
we gave a fellet of Sheep Skin (which we brought for Spung-
ing) to 3 Chiefs one to each of 2 inches wide, [on] which they
lay Great value (prising those felets equal to a fine horse), a
fine Day we finished the pickengen (picketing) around our
works.

25th December Christmas Tuesday —

I was awakened before Day by a discharge of 3 platoons
from the Party and the french, the men merrily Disposed, I
give them all a little Taffia and permited 3 Cannon fired, at
raising Our flag, Some Men Went out to hunt & the others
to Danceing and Continued until 9 oClock P.M. when the
frolick ended &c.

1 Biddle says: "We had told the Indians not to visit us, as it was one of our
great medicine days." Gass says: "Flour, dried apples, pepper, and other articles
were distributed in the different messes to enable them to celebrate Christmas in a
proper and social manner." Three rations of brandy were served during the day,
which was mainly spent in dancing; no women were present save Charboneau's three
wives, who were only spectators. — En.
a temperate day no Indians to day or yesterday. A man from the NW. Company Came Down from the Gross Ventres to get one of our interpreters to assist them in trade. This man informed that the Party of Gross Ventres who pursued the Assiniboins that Stold their horses, had all returned in their usual way by Small parties, the last of the party bringing 8 horses which they Stole from a Camp of Assiniboins which they found on Mouse River.

27° December 1804 Thursday

a little fine Snow weather Something Colder than yesterday Several Indians here to Day, much Suprised at the Bellos (Bellos) ¹ & method of making Sundery articles of Iron Wind hard from the NW.²

¹ Which they considered as a very great medicine. — Biddle (L. and C., i, p. 141).
² Here follows, in Biddle, a sketch of the Siouan tribes, mainly the same information which we have thus far obtained from the MS. text. — Ed.
Chapter VI

Among the Mandans

Clark's Journal, December 28, 1804—February 3, 1805; February 13—March 16, 1805
Entries by Lewis, February 3-13 and March 16

28th of December Friday 1804—

Blew very hard last night, the frost fell like a Shower of Snow, nothing remarkable to day, the Snow Drifting from one bottom to another and from the leavel plains into the hollows &c.

29th December Saturday 1804—

The frost fell last night nearly a 1/4 of an inch Deep and Continu'd to fall untill the Sun was of Some hite, the Mercury Stood this Morning at 9. below 0 which is not considered Cold, as the Changes take place gradually without long intermisions  a number of Indians here

30th December Sunday 1804—

Cold the Territ' at 20 below 0 a number of Indians here to day they are much Supprised at the Bellows 'one Deer Killed

31st of December Monday 1804 Fort Mandan—

A fine Day  Some wind last night which Mixed the Snow and Sand in the head of the river, which has the appearance of hillocks of Sand on the ice, which is also Covered with Sand & Snow, the frost which falls in the night, Continues on the earth & old Snow &c. &c. a number of Indians here every Day  our blakSmith Mending their axes, hoes &c. &c. for which the Squars bring Corn for payment.

1 Biddle here adds: "In their general conduct during these visits they are honest, but will occasionally pilfer any small article." Mackenzie says (Masson's Bourg.

[242]
The Day was ushered in by the Discharge of two Cannon, we Suffered 16 men with their Musick to visit the Village for the purpose of Dancing, by as they Said the particular request of the Chiefs of that Village, about 11 oClock I with an interpreter & two men walked up to the Village, (my views were to alay Some little Miss understanding which had taken place thro' jelloucy and mortification as to our treatment towards them I found them much pleased at the Dancing of our men, I ordered my black Servent to Dance which amused the Crowd Verry much, and Somewhat astonished them, that So large a man should be active &c. &c. I went into the lodges of all the men of note, except two, whom I heard had made Some expressions not favourable towards us, in Comparing us with the traders from the north,—those Chiefs observed (to us that) what they Sayed was in just (in jest) & laftur, just as I was about to return, the 2d Chief and the Black man, also a Chief return'd from a Mission on which they had been Sent to meet a large party (150) of Gross Ventres who were on their way down from their Camps 10 Miles above to revenge on the Shoe tribe an injury which they had received by a Shoe man Steeling a Gross Ventres Girl, those Chiefs gave the pipe [and] turned the party back, after Delivering up the Girl, which the Shoe Chief had taken and given to them for that purpose. I returned in the evening,

Nord-Ouest, i. p. 310), of the Indian opinion regarding Lewis and Clark: "The Indians admired the air gun, as it could discharge forty shots out of one lead, but they dreaded the magic of the owners. "Had I these white warriors in the upper plains," said the Gros Ventres chief, "my young men on horseback would soon do for them, as they would do for so many wolves, too," continued he, "there are only two sensible men among them, the worker of iron and the mender of guns." — Ed.

1 "Particularly with the movements of one of the Frenchmen who danced on his head" (Biddle). Cours here asserts (i. p. 219) that Clark explained to Biddle that the Frenchman danced on his hands, head downward. — Ed.

2 Biddle here adds "or wandering Minnetarees," an epithet often used by Lewis and Clark to designate an Arapaho band, who are still known as "Gros Ventres of the Prairie," in distinction from the "Gros Ventres of the Missouri," the term commonly applied to the Minitaree (now settled at Fort Berthold, N. D.). See p. 225, note, ante. — Ed.
at night the party except 6 returned, with 3 robes, an[d] 13 Strings of Corn which the indians had given them. The Day was worm, Themt' 34 above 0, Some few Drops of rain about Sunset, at Dark it began to Snow, and Snowed the greater part of the night, (the temp' for Snow is about 0) The Black Cat with his family visited us to day and brought a little meet

2\textsuperscript{nd} of January Wednesday 1805 —

a Snowey morning, a party of Men go to Dance at the 2\textsuperscript{nd} Village to Dance, Cap' Lewis & the interpt' Visit the 2\textsuperscript{nd} Village, and return in the evening, Some Snow to Day Verry cold in the evening

3\textsuperscript{rd} of January Thursday 1805 —

Some Snow to day, 8 men go to hunt the buffalow, killed a hare & wolf Several Indians visit us to day & a Gross Ventre came after his wife, who had been much abused, & came here for Protection.

4\textsuperscript{th} of January Friday 1805 Fort Mandan —

a worm Snowey Morning, the Thermt' at 28\degree above 0, Cloudy, Sent out 3 Men to hunt down the river, Several Indians Came to day, the little Crow, who has proved friendly Came, we gave him a handkerchf & 2 files, in the evening the weather became cold and windey, wind from the NW. I am Verry unwell the after part of the Daye

5\textsuperscript{th} of January Saturday 1805 —

a cold day Some Snow, Several Indians visit us with their axes to get them mended, I imploy my Self Drawing a Connection of the Countrey\textsuperscript{2} from what information I have re-

\footnote{1 This day I dis-covered how the Indians keep their horses during the winter. In the day-time they are permitted to run out and gather what they can; and at night are brought into the lodges, with the natives themselves, and fed upon cottonwood branches; and in this way are kept in tolerable case. — Gass (p. 96).}

\footnote{2 This map was sent to President Jefferson, April 7, 1805, and preserved in the archives of the War Department. As drafted by Nicholas King, 1806, it is cited herein as "Lewis's map of 1806." — Cove (L. and C., i, p. 221). An atlas volume contains this and others of Clark's maps.}
a Buffalow Dance (or Medeson) (Medecine) for 3
ights passed in the 1st Village, a curious Custom the old
men arrange themselves in a circle & after Smoke[ing] a pipe
which is handed them by a young man, Dress[ed] up for the
purpose, the young men who have their wives back of the
Circle go [each] to one of the old men with a whining tone
and request the old man to take his wife (who presents [het-
selt] necked except a robe) and — (or Sleep with her) the
Girl then takes the Old Man (who very often can scarcely
walk) and leads him to a convenient place for the business,
after which they return to the lodge; if the old man (or a
white man) returns to the lodge without gratifying the Man &
his wife, he offers her again and again; it is often the Case that
after the 2d time without Kissing the Husband throws a new
robe over the old man &c. and begs him not to dispise him
& his wife (We Sent a man to this Medesian Dance last
night, they gave him 4 Girls) all this is to cause the buffalow
to Come near So that they may Kill them ¹

6th of January Sunday 1805 —
a Cold day but few Indians to day I am ingaved
[engaged] as yesterday

7th of January Monday 1805 —
a very cold Clear Day. The Them[et] Stood at 22. below
° Wind NW., the river fell 1 inch Several Indians returned
from hunting, one of them the Big White Chief of the
Lower Mandan Village, Dined with us, and gave me a Sketch
of the Countrey as far as the high Mountains, & on the South
Side of the River Rejone,² he Says that the river rejone
receives (receives) 6 Small rivers on the S. Side, & that the
Countrey is very Hilley and the greater part Covered with
timber Great numbers of beazer &c. the 3 men returned
from hunting, they killd, 4 Deer & 2 Wolves, Saw Buffalow a
long ways off. I continue to Draw a connected plot from the

¹ This ceremony is described much more fully by Biddle (i. pp. 150, 151), and
by Prince Maximilian (Voyage, ii, pp. 453, 454, and iii, pp. 56-60). — Ed.
² An imperfect phonetic rendering of the French name Roche-Jaune, meaning
"Yellowstone," still applied to the river here described. — Ed.
information of Traders, Indians & my own observation & ideas. from the best information, the Great falls is about (S'w) miles nearly West,

8th of January Tuesday 1805

a cold Day but few Indians at the fort to day wind from the N.W. one man at the Village

9th of January Wednesday 1805

a Cold Day Thermometer at 21 below o, great numbers of Indians go to kill Cows, (C. Clark acct them with 2 or 4 men killed a number of cows near the fort,) the little Crow Brackf! with us, Several Indians Call at the Fort nearly frosed, one man reported that he had Sent his Son a Small boy to the fort about 3 oClock, & was much distresed at not finding him here, the after part of this day verry Cold, and wind keen

10th of January Thursday 1805

last night was excessively Cold the Murkery this morning Stood at 40. below o which is 72 below the freesing point, we had one man out last night, who returned about 8 oClock this morning. The Indians of the lower Villege turned out to hunt for a man & a boy who had not returned from the hunt of yesterday, and borrow'd a Slay to bring them in expecting to find them frosed to death about 10 oClock the boy about

1 Lacroque says (Masson's Journeys, pp. 319, 311) that Lewis and Clark found all the longitudes estimated by David Thompson to be inaccurate. He gives interesting details as to the territorial claims of the United States, saying: "They include in their territory as far North as river 54 which affords, for as it was impossible for a line drawn west from the west end of lac des Bois to strike the Mississippi, they make it run till it strikes its tributary waters, that is, the north branches of the Missouri and from thence to the Pacific." — Ed.

2 Biddle here describes another licentious ceremony, called "the medicine-dance." — Ed.

3 The buffaloes were usually called by the French hunters "wild cows" or "wild cattle," a term often adopted by the English. — Ed.

4 In Biddle's account are found some additional details, especially interesting as showing a humane and generous nature in these Indians: "The boy had been a prisoner and adopted from charity, yet the distress of the father proved that he felt for him the tenderest affection. The man was a person of no distinction, yet the whole village was full of anxiety for his safety." — Ed.
13 years of age Came to the fort with his feet frosted and had layed out last night without fire with only a Buffalo Robe to Cover him, the Dress which he wore was a pr. of Cabra (antelope) Legins, which is very thin and mockersons we had his feet put in cold water and they are Coming too. Soon after the arrival of the Boy, a Man Came in who had also Stayed out without fire, and very thinly Clothed, this man was not the least injured. Customs & the habits of those people has anured [them] to bare more Cold than I thought it possible for man to endure. Sent out 3 men to hunt Elk below about 7 miles.

Verry Cold, Send out 3 men to join 3 now below & hunt, Shu tat har ra or Black Cat came to See us and Stay all night, the inturpiter oldist wife Sick, Some of our Men go to See a War Medeson made at the Village on the opposit Side of the river, this is a blank in MS. 

11 January Friday 1805

12 January Saturday 1805

13 Sunday 1805

a verry Cold Day three of our hunters J & R Fields with 2 Elk on a Slay Sent one more hunter out.

Referring to the custom of dividing their game equally among all the families of the tribe, whether or not these have sent out men to the hunt, and to their improvidence and carelessness (see Biddle, i, pp. 133, 155). — Ed.
the river below, they will Stay out some Days, M' Chabonee (our inturpeter) and one man that accompanied him to Some loges of the Menetarrees near the Turtle Hill 1 returned, both froze in their faces. Chaboneu informs that the Clerk of the Hudson Bay Co. with the Me ne tar res has been Speaking Some fiew express unfavourable towards us, and that it is Said the NW Co: intends building a fort at the Mene tar rés. he Saw the grand Chief of the Big bellies who Spoke Slightly of the Americans, Saying if we would give our great flag to him he would Come to See us.

14th of January 1805 Monday

This morning early a number of indians men women children Dogs &c. &c. passed down on the ice to joine those that passed yesterday, we Sent Serg' Pryor and five men with those indians to hunt (Several men with the Venereal caught from the Mandan women) one of our hunters Sent out Several days [ago] arived & informs that one Man (Whitehouse) is frost bit and Can't walk home.

15th January Tuesday 1805 Fort Mandan

between 12 & 3 oClock this Morning we had a total eclips of the Moon, a part of the observations necessary for our purpose in this eclips we got which is

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Total Darkness of the Moon</th>
<th>End of total Darkness of The moon</th>
<th>End of the eclips.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12 h-57 m-54 s</td>
<td>Total Darkness of the Moon</td>
<td>-44 -00</td>
<td>-59 -10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This morning not so Cold as yesterday Wind from the S.E. wind choped around to the N.W. Still temperate four Considerate [considerable — Ed.] men of the Menetarre Came to See us We Smoked in the pipe, many Mand' present also, we Showed (attentions) to those men who had been impressed with an unfavourable oppinion of us (which satisfied them).

1 On the Little Missouri River. — Ed.
about thirty Mandans came to the fort to day, 6 chiefs, those Me-ne-ta-rees told them they were liars, had told them if they came to the fort the whites men would kill them, they had been with them all night, Smoked in the pipe and have been treated well and the whites had danced for them, observing the Mandans were bad and ought to hide themselves. One of the 1st War Chiefs of the big bell[es] nation Came to see us to day with one man and his Squar to wate on him (requested that she might be used for the night) his wife handsome. We Shot the Air gun, and gave two Shots with the Cannon which pleased them very much, the little Crow 2. of the lower Village Came & brought us Corn &c. 4 men of ours who had been hunting returned one frost'd

This War Chief gave us a Chart in his Way of the Missourie, he informed us of his intentions of going to War in the Spring against the Snake Indians we advised him to look back at the number of Nations who had been destroyed by War, and reflect upon what he was about to do, observing if he wished the happiness of his nation, he would be at peace with all by that by being at peace and having plenty of goods amongst them & a free intercourse with those defenceless nations, they would get on easy terms a greater Number of horses, and that Nation would increas, if he went to War against those defenceless people, he would displease his great father, and he would not receive that perfection & care from him as other nations who listened to his word. This Chief who is a young man 26 y' old replied that if his going to war against the Snake Indians would be displeasing to us he would not go, he had horses enough.

We observed that what we had said was the words of his great father, and what we had Spoken to all the Nations which we Saw on our passage up, they all promis to open their ears, and we do not know as yet if any of them has Shut them (we are doubtfull of the Soues) if they do not attend to what we have told them their great father will open their ears. This Chief Said that he would advise all his nation to stay at home until we Saw the Snake Indians & Knew if they would be friendly, he himself would attend to what we had told him.
LEWIS AND CLARK JOURNALS [Jan. 17, 1805]

a very windy morning hard from the North Thermometer at 0, Several Indians here to day.

January Thursday 1805

a fine warm morning, M: La Rock and M: Kinzey came down to see us with them several of the Grosse Ventres.

January Friday 1805

a fine day. Messrs. Le Rock & M: Kinzey returned home, sent three horses down to our hunting Camp for the meat they had killed, Jussomes Squar, left him and went to the Village.

January Saturday 1805

...a Cold fair day. Several Indians at the fort to day. A Misunderstanding took place between the two interprters on account of their squars, one of the Squars of Shabowner Squars being Sick, I ordered my Servent to give her some foot stewed and tea at dif times which was the cause of the misunderstanding.

January Monday 1805

...a number of Indians here to day, a fine day, nothing remarkable; one man very bad with the pox.

January Tuesday 1805

...a fine warm Day, attempted to cut the boat & perogues out of the ice, found water at about 8 inches under the first ice, the next thickness about 3 feet.

January Wednesday 1805

A Cold Day. Snow fell 4 inches deep, the accuracies (accurrencies) of this day is as is common.

---

1 I went up with one of the men to the villages. They treated us friendly and gave us victuals. After we were done eating they presented a bowful to a buffalo head, saying, "eat that." Their superstitions credulity is so great, that they believe by using the head well, the living buffalo will come, and that they will get a supply of meat. — Gass (pp. 98, 99).
24th January Thursday 1805

A fine day, our interpreters appear to understand each other better than a few days past. Sent out several hunters, they returned without killing anything. Cut coal wood.1

25th January 1805 Friday

We are informed of the arrival of a band of assiniboins at the villages with the grand chief of those tribes call[ed] the (Fils de petite veau) to trade, one of our interpreters & one man set out to the big belley camp opposite the island, men employ'd in cutting the boat out of the ice, and collecting coal wood.

26th January Saturday 1805

A very fine warm day. Several Indians dine with us and are much pleased. One man taken violently bad with the plurisy, bleed & apply those remedies common to that disorder.

27th January Sunday 1805

A fine day, attempt to cut our boat and canoes out of the ice, a difficult task I fear as we find water between the ice. I bleed the man with the plurisy to-day & swet him. Cap' Lewis took off the toes of one foot of the boy who got frost bit some time ago. Shabonee our interpreter returned, & informed that the assiniboins had returned to their camps, & brought 3 horses of M' Larock's to stay here for fear of their being stolen by the assiniboins who are great rogues.2 cut off the boy's toes.

28th January Monday 1805

Attempt to cut through the ice to get our boat and canoes out without success. Several Indians here wishing to get war hatchets made the man sick yesterday is getting well. M' Jessome our interpreter was taken very unwell this evening warm day.

---

1 Wood to make charcoal. — Biddle (p. 156).
2 Larocque says that he sent his horses to the fort in accordance with Captain Clark's offer to care for them with his own animals. — Ed.
Gave Jassome a Dost of Salts. We Send & Collect Stones and put them on a large log heap to heet them with a view of worming water in the Boat and by that means, Sepperate her from the Ice, our attempt appears to be defeated by the Stones all breaking & flying to peaces in the fire. a fine worm Day, we are now burning a large Coal pit, to mend the indians hatchets, & make them war axes, the only means by which we precure Corn from them.

a fine morning, clouded up at 9 oClock, M' La Rocke paid us a Visit, & we gave him an answer respecting the request he made when last here of accompanying us on our Journey &c. (refused)

Snowed last night, wind high from the NW. Sawed off the boys toes. Sent 5 men down the river to hunt with 2 horses, our interpeter something better. George Drewyer taken with the Pleurisy last evening Bled & gave him Some Sage tea, this morning he is much better. Cold disagreeable Day.

a cold windey Day our hunters return'd having killed only one Deer, a War Chief of the Me ne tar ras came with some Corn requested to have a War hatchet made, & requested to be allowed to go to War against the Souses & Recarres who had Killed a mandan Some time past. We refused, and gave reasons, which he very readily assented to, and promised to open his ears to all We Said this Man is young and named (Seeing Snake)-Mar-book, She-ah-O-ke-ah. this mans Woman Set out & he prosued her, in the evening

a fine Day, one Deer killed our interpeter Still unwell, one of the wives of the Big belley interpeter Sick. M' Larocke leave us to day (this man is a Clerk to the NW. Company, & very anxious to accompany us)
3rd of February Sunday 1805.

A fine day; the blacksmith again commenced his operations. We were visited by but few of the natives today. The situation of our boat and perogues is now alarming, they are firmly inclosed in the ice and almost covered with snow. The ice which incloses them lies in several stratas of unequal thicknesses which are separated by streams of water. This peculiarly unfortunate because so soon as we cut through the first strata of ice the water rushes up and rises as high as the upper surface of the ice and thus creates such a depth of water as renders it impracticable to cut away the lower strata which appears firmly attatched to, and confining the bottom of the vessels. The instruments we have hitherto used has been the ax only, with which, we have made several attempts that proved unsuccessful from the cause above mentioned, we then determined to attempt freeing them from the ice by means of boiling water which we purposed heating in the vessels by means of hot stones, but this expedient proved also fruitless, as every species of stone which we could procure in the neighbourhood partook so much of the calcareous genus that they burst into small particles on being exposed to the heat of the fire. We now determined as the dernier resort to prepare a parcel of iron spikes and attatch them to the end of small poles of convenient length and endeavour by means of them to free the vessels from the ice. We have already prepared a large rope of Elk-skin and a windless by means of which we have no doubt of being able to draw the boat on the bank provided we can free [it] from the ice.

4th February, Monday 1805.

This morning fair tho' could the thermometer stood at 18. below Naught, wind from N W. Capt Clark set out with a hunting party consisting of sixteen of our command.

1 From this point to the 13th of February, the journal is written by Lewis, during Clark's absence on a hunting expedition (Feb. 4-12). This is the only hiatus in Clark's regular journalizing, throughout the entire expedition; but under date of February 13th, pp. 259-261, post, after his return, he gives a brief summary of the events of each day during his trip, so that his record is practically complete. — Ed. [253]
and two Frenchmen who together with two others, have established a small hut and resided this winter within the vicinity of Fort Mandan under our protection. visited by many of the natives today. our stock of meat which we had procured in the Months of November & December is now nearly exhausted; a supply of this articles is at this moment peculiarly interesting as well for our immediate consumption, as that we may have time before the approach of the warm season to prepare the meat for our voyage in the spring of the year. Capt. Clark therefore determined to continue his route down the river even as far as the River bullet unless he should find a plenty of game nearer. the men transported their baggage on a couple of small wooden Slays drawn by themselves, and took with them 3 pack horses which we had agreed should be returned with a load of meat to Fort Mandan as soon as they could procure it. no buffaloe have made their appearance in our neighbourhood for some weeks (time shorter); and I am informed that our Indian neighbours suffer extremly at this moment for the article of flesh. Shields killed two deer this evening, both very lean—one a large buck, he had shed his horns.

5th February Tuesday 1805.—

Pleasant morning wind from N.W. fair; visited by many of the natives who brought a considerable quanity of corn in payment for the work which the blacksmith had done for them they are peculiarly attatched to a battle ax formed in a very inconvenient manner in my opinion. it is fabricated of iron only, the blade is extremly thin, from 7 to nine inches in length and from \(4 \frac{3}{4}\) to 6 Inches on it's edge, from whence the sides proceed nearly in a straight line to the eye where it's width is generally not more than an inch. the eye is round & about one inch in diameter, the handle seldom more than fourteen inches in length, the whole weighing about one pound the great length of the blade of this ax, added to the small size of the handle renders a stroke uncertain and

1 The Cannon-ball River, which empties into the Missouri near Fort Rice, N. D. The expedition had reached the mouth of this stream on Oct. 18. — Ed.
easily avoided, while the shortness of the handle must render a blow much less forceable if even well directed, and still more inconvenient as they uniformly use this instrument in action on horseback. The older fashion is still more inconvenient, it is somewhat in the form of the blade of an Espantoon but is attached to a halve of the dimensions before described the blade is sometimes by way of ornament perforated with two three or more small circular holes. The following is the general figure it is from 12 to 15 inches in length.

Fair morning Wind from N.W. had a sley prepared against the return of the horses which Capt Clark had promised to send back as soon as he should be able to procure a load of meat. Visited by many of the natives among others the Big white, the Coal, big-man, hairy horn and the black man, I smoked with them, after which they retired a deportment not common, for they usually pester us with their good company the balance of the day after once being introduced to our apartment. Shields killed three antelopes this evening the blacksmiths take a considerable quantity of corn today in payment for their labour. the blacksmith’s have proved a happy resource to us in our present situation as I believe it would have been difficult to have devised any other method to have procured corn from the natives. the Indians are extravagantly fond of sheet iron of which they form arrow-points and manufacturer into instruments for scraping and dressing their buffalo robes. I permitted the blacksmith to dispose of a part of a sheet iron callaboos (camboose stove) which had been nearly burnt out on our passage up the river, and for each piece about four inches square he obtained from seven to eight gallons of corn from the natives who appeared extremly pleased with the exchange.

1 A rare and practically obsolete form of espantoon, a word itself now little used. The implement meant is the halp-ike, a sort of halberd formerly used by certain officers of the British army. — Cov. (L. and C., i. p. 250).

2 This is an unusual form of caboose, from the Dutch mariners’ name of the cook’s galley. — Ed.
This morning was fair. Thermometer at 18° above naught much warmer than it has been for some days; wind S.E. continue to be visited by the natives. The Serg' of the guard reported that the Indian women (wives to our interpreters) were in the habit of unbarring the fort gate at any time of night and admitting their Indian visitors, I therefore directed a lock to be put to the gate and ordered that no Indian but those attached to the garrison should be permitted to remain all night within the fort or admitted during the period which the gate had been previously ordered to be kept shut, which was from sunset until sunrise.

8° February Friday 1805.

This morning was fair wind S.E., the weather still warm and pleasant. visited by the black-Cat, the principal chief of the Roop-tar-he, or upper Mandane village. this man possesses more integrity, firmness, intelligence and perspicuity of mind than any Indian I have met with in this quarter, and I think with a little management he may be made a useful agent in furthering the views of our government. The black Cat presented me with a bow and apologized for not having completed the shield he had promised alledging that the weather had been too cold to permit his making it, I gave him some small shot 6 fishing-hooks and 2 yards of ribbon, his squaw also presented me with 2 pair of mockersons for which in return I gave a small lookingglass and a couple of needles. the chief dined with me and left me in the evening, he informed me that his people suffered very much for the article of meat, and that he had not himself tasted any for several days.

9° February Saturday 1805.

The morning fair and pleasant, wind from S.E. visited by M: M'Kinsey one of the N.W. Company's clerks, this evening a man by the name of Howard whom I had given permission to go [to] the Mandane village returned after the gate was shut and rather than call to the guard to have it opened scaled the works an Indian who was looking on shortly after
followed his example. I convinced the Indian of the impropriety of his conduct, and explained to him the risk he had run of being severely treated, the fellow appeared much allarmed, I gave him a small piece of tobacco and sent him away. Howard I had committed to the care of the guard with a determination to have him tried by a Court-martial for this offence. this man is an old soldier which still hightens this office.

12th February Sunday 1805.

This Morning was Cloudy after a slight Snow which fell in the course of the night the wind blew very hard from N.W. altho' the thermometer stood at 18 above naught the violence of the wind caused a degree of cold that was much more unpleasant than that of yesterday when thermometer stood at 10 only above the same point. M' M Kinzev left me this morning. Charbono returned with one of the Frenchmen, and informed me that he had left the three Horses and two men with the meat which Cap' Clark had sent at some distance below on the river he told me that the horses were heavy loaded and that not being shod it was impossible for horses to travel on the ice. I determined to send down some men with two small slays for the meat and accordingly I gave orders that they should set out early the next morning. two men were also sent to conduct the horses by way of the plain.

14th February Monday 1805.

The party that were ordered last evening set out early this morning, the weather was fair and could wind N.W. about five O'clock this evening one of the wives of Charbono was delivered of a fine boy, it is worthy of remark that this was the first child which this woman had bore, and as is common in such cases her labour was tedious and the pain violent; M' Jessome informed me that he had frequently administered a small portion of the rattle of the rattle-snake, which he

---

1 This was Sacajawea, the Shoshone captive purchased by Charboneau, who had two other wives among the Mandan. Sacajawea was the only woman taken upon the Expedition. — Ed.
assured me had never failed to produce the desired effect, that of hastening the birth of the child; having the rattle of a snake by me I gave it to him and he administered two rings of it to the woman broken in small pieces with the fingers and added to a small quantity of water. Whether this medicine was truly the cause or not I shall not undertake to determine, but I was informed that she had not taken it more than ten minutes before she brought forth perhaps this remedy may be worthy of future experiments, but I must confess that I want faith as to it's efficacy.

February Tuesday 1805.

The morning was fair tho' could, thermometer at 14. below naught wind S.E. ordered the Blacksmith to shoe the horses and some others to prepare some gears in order to send them down with three slays to join the hunting party and transport the meat which they may have procured to this place the men whom I had sent for the meat left by Charbono did not return untill 4 OClock this evening. Drewyer arrived with the horses about the same time, the horses appeared much fatiged I directed some meal brands [bran] given them moisened with a little water but to my astonishment found that they would not eat it but prefered the bark of the cotton wood which forms the principall article of food usually given them by their Indian masters in the winter season; for this purpose they cause the tree to be felled by their women and the horses feed on the boughs and bark of their tender branches. the Indians in our neighbourhood are frequently pilfered of their horses by the Recaes, Souixs and Assinniboins and therefore make it an invariable rule to put their horses in their lodges at night. in this situation the only food of the horse consists of a few sticks of the cottonwood from the size of a man's finger to that of his arm. the Indians are invariably severe riders, and frequently have occasion for many days together through the whole course of the day to employ their horses in pursuing the Buffalo or transporting meat to their vilages during which time they are seldom suffered to tast food; at night the Horse returned to his stall where his
food is what seems to me a scanty allowance of wood. Under these circumstances it would seem that their horses could not long exist or at least could not retain their flesh and strength, but the contrary is the fact, this valuable animal under all those disadvantages is seldom seen meager or unfit for service. A little after dark this evening Cap' Clark arrived with the hunting party, since they set out they have killed forty Deer, three buffalo bulls, & sixteen Elk, most of them were so meager that they were unfit for use, particularly the buffalo and male Elk, the wolves also which are here extremely numerous helped themselves to a considerable proportion of the hunt, if an animal is killed and lies only one night exposed to the wolves it is almost invariably devoured by them.

13* February Wednesday 1805.

The morning cloudy thermometer 2 e below naught wind from S.E. visited by the Black-Cat gave him a battle ax with which he appeared much gratified.

[Clark]

11 returned last Night from a hunting party much fatigued, having walked 30 miles on the ice and through Points of wood land in which the Snow was nearly Knee Deep.

The 1st day [Feb 4] I left the fort proceeded on the ice to new Mandan Island, 22 miles & camped, killed nothing, & nothing to eat.

The 2d day — the morning very Cold & Windy. I broke thro' the ice and got my feet and legs wet. Sent out 4 hunters thro' a point to kill a Deer & cook it by the time the party should get up, those hunters killed a Deer & 2 Buffalo Bulls the Buffalo too Meagur to eat, we ate the Deer & proceeded on to an old Indian Lodge, Sent out the hunters & they brought in three lean Deer, which we made use of for food, walking on uneven ice has blistered the bottoms of my feet, and walking is painfull to me.

1 Clark here resumes the record, and the remainder of the journal in Codex C is (with the exception of one entry) in his handwriting. — Ed.
3rd day — cold morning the after part of the Day worm, Camped on a Sand point near the mouth of a Creek on the SW. Side We Call hunting Creek, I turned out with the hunters I killed 2 Deer the hunters killed an Elk, Buffalo Bull, & 5 Deer. all Meager

4th Day — hunted the two bottoms near the Camp Killed 9 Elk, 18 Deer, brought to camp all the meat fit to eat, & had the bones taken out. every man engaged either in hunting or Collecting & packing the meat to Camp

5th Day — Despatched one of the party our interpreter & 2 french men with the 3 horses loaded with the best of the meat to the fort 44 miles Distant, the remaining meat I had packed on the 2 Slays & drawn down to the next point about 3 miles below, at this place I had all the meat collected which was killed yesterday & had escaped the Wolves, Ravin & Magpie; (which are verry numerous about this place) and put into a close pen made of logs to secure it from the wolves & birds & proceeded on to a large bottom nearly opposit the Chisscheter (heart) River, in this bottom we found but little game, Great No. of Wolves, on the hills Saw Several parsels of Buffalo. Camped. I killed a Buck

6th Day — The Buffalo Seen last night proved to be Bulls, lean & unfit for to make use of as food, the Distance from Camp being nearly 60 miles and the packing of meat that distance attended with much difficulty Deturmined me to return and hunt the points above, we Set out on our return and halted at an old Indian lodge 40 miles below Fort Mandan, Killed 3 Elk, & 2 Deer.

7th Day — a cold Day wind blew hard from the N.W. J. Fields got one of his ears frosed deturmined to lay by and hunt to day Killed an Elk & 6 deer, all that was fit for use [of] this meat I had Boned and put into a Close pen made of logs.

8th Day — the air keen halted at the old Camp we stayed in on the 2nd night after we left the Fort, expecting to meat the horses at this Place, killed 3 Deer, Several men being nearly out of Mockersons, & the horses not returning deturmined me to return to the Fort on tomorrow.
9th day. — Set out early, saw great numbers of *Grouse* feeding on the young Willows, on the Sand bars, one man I sent in pursuit of a gangue of Elk Killed three near the old Ricara Village, and joined at the Fort. Sent him back to secure the meat, one man with him. The ice on the parts of the river which was very rough, as I went down, was smooth on my return. This is owing to the rise and fall of the water, which takes place every day or two, and caused by partial thaws, and obstructions in the passage of the water thro' the ice, which frequently attaches itself to the bottom, the water when rising forces its way thro' the cracks & air holes above the old ice, & in one night becomes a smooth surface of ice 4 to 6 inches thick, the River falls & the ice Sink in places with the water and attaches itself to the bottom, and when it again rises to its former height, frequently leaves a Valley of several feet to Supply with water to bring it on a level surface. The water of the Missouri at this time is clear with little tinge.

I saw several old villages near the Chisscheter River on enquirey found they were Mandan villages destroyed by the Sou & Small Pox, they [were] numerous and lived in 6 (g) Villages near that place.

14th February Thursday 1805.

The Snow fell 3 inches deep last night, a fine morning, Despatched George Drewyer & 3 men, with two Slays drawn by 3 horses for the Meat left below.

15th February Friday 1805

at 10 oClock P. M. last night the men that [were] despatched yesterday for the Meat, returned and informed us that they were on their march down at the distance of about 24 miles below the Fort (G. Drewyer Frasure, S Gutterage, & Newman with a broken Gun), about 105 Indians which they took to be Souses rushed on them and cut their horses from the Slays, two of which they carried off in great haste, the 3rd horse was given up to the party by the intercession of an Indian who assist.  

1 These men were George Drouillard, Robert Frazier, Silas Goodrich, and John Newman. — Ed.
Some authority on the occasion, probably more through fear of himself or Some of the Indians being killed by our men who were not disposed to be Robed of all they had tamely, they also forced 2 of the men knives & a tamahawk, the man obliged them to return the tamahawk [, but] the knives they ran off with.

We dispatched two men to inform the Mandans, and if any of them chose to pursue those robbers, to come down in the morning, and join Cap' Lewis who intended to Set out with a party of men Verry early, by 12 oClock the Chief of the 2nd Village Big White came down, and Soon after one other Chief and Several men. The Chief observed that all the young men of the 2 Villages were out hunting, and but very few guns were left, Cap' Lewis Set out at Sunrise with 24 men, to meet those Suses &c. Several Indians accompanied him Some with Bows & arrows Some with Spears & Battle axes, 2 with fusiles (fusils).1 the morning fine. The Thermometer Stood at 16° below 0, Nought, visited by 2 of the Big Bellies this evening, one Chief of the Mandans returned from Cap' Lewises Party nearly blind, this Complaint is as I am inform'd Common at this Season of the year and caused by the reflection of the Sun on the ice and Snow, it is cured by "jentilley swetting the part affected, by throwing Snow on a hot Stone."

a Verry Cold part of the night one man killed a verry large Red Fox to day.

a fine morning, visited by but few Indians to day, at Dusk two of the Indians who went down with Cap' Lewis returned, Soon after two others and one man (Howard) with his feet frosted, and informed that the Ind: who Committed the robbery of the 2 horses was So far a head that they could not be overtaken, they left a number of pans of Mockersons which, the Mandans knew to be Suses Mockersons, This war party camped verry near the last Camp I made when on my hunting party, where they left Some Corn, as a deception, with a view to induce a belief that they were Ricarras.

---

1 Flint-lock muskets. — Ed.
Cap' Lewis & party proceeded on down the meat I left at my last Camp was taken.

this morning worm & a little Cloudy, the Coal & his Son visited me to day with a about 30° of dried Buffalow meat, & Some Tallow M' M. Kinsey one of the NW. Comp. Clerks visited me (one of the horses the Sous robes a few Days past, belonged to this man) The after part of the day fair.

a cloudy morning Some Snow, Several Indians here to day M' M Kinsey leave me, the after part of the day fine I am much engaged makeing a descriptive List of the Rivers from Information 1 our Store of Meat is out to day.

a fine Day visited by Several of the Mandans to day, our Smiths are much engaged mending and makeing Axes for the Indians for which we get Corn

a Butifull Day, visited by the Little raven very early this morning I am informed of the Death of an old man whome I saw in the Mandan Village this man, informed me that he "was 120 winters old, he requested his grand Children to Dress him after Death & Set him on a Stone on a hill with his face towards his old Village or Down the river, that he might go streight to his brother at their old village under ground." 2 I observed Several Mandans very old chiefly men 3

1 See "Scientific Data: Summary Statement of Rivers" — Clark's draft; especially the information collected during winter of 1804-05 of streams above Fort Mandan flowing into the Missouri. — Ep.
2 Referring to the myth of their tribal origin, as having come from an underground region. For a minute account of this belief, written from the recital made by a prominent Mandan, see Prince Maximilian's Travels, ii, pp. 431-436. — Ep.
3 Whose robust exercises fortify the body, while the laborious occupations of the women shorten their existence. — Biddle (i, p. 163).
a Delightfull Day put out our Clothes to Sun. Visited by the big White & Big Man they informed me that Several men of their nation was gone to Consult their Medison Stone about 3 day march to the South West to know what was to be the result of the ensuing year. They have great confidence in this stone, and say that it informs them of every thing which is to happen, & visit it every Spring & Sometimes in the Summer. "They having arrived at the Stone gave it smoke and proceed to the Wood at Some distance to Sleep the next morning return to the Stone, and find marks white & raised on the stone representing the peace or War which they are to meet with, and other changes, which they are to meet.” This Stone has a leavel Surface of about 20 feet in Surcumfrance, thick and porus,” and no doubt has Some mineral quallites effected by the Sun.¹

The Big Bellies have a Stone to which they ascribe nearly the Same Virtues.

Cap' Lewis returned with 2 Slays loaded with meat, after finding that he could not overtake the Soues War party, (who had in their way distroyed all the meat at one Deposit which I had made & Burnt the Lodges) determinded to proceed on to the lower Deposit which he found had not been observed by the Soues he hunted two day Killed 36 Deer & 14 Elk, Several of them so meager, that they were unfit for use, the meet which he killed and that in the lower Deposit amounting to about 3000lb was brought up on two Slays one Drawn by 16 men had about 2400lb on it.

¹ See descriptions of this “medicine stone,” and of the ceremonies with which the Indians invoked the spirit supposed to dwell there, in Long’s Expedition, i, pp. 273, 274; and Maximilian’s Voyage, ii, pp. 459, 460. Both the Mandan and Minitaree were accustomed to consult these oracles; Matthews says of the latter (Ethnog. Hidatsa, p. 51): "The Hidatsa now seldom refer to it, and I do not think they ever visit it." — Ed.
tinud Snowing for about one hour, and Cleared away fair. The two hunters left below arrived, they killed two Elk, and hung them up out of reach of the Wolves. The Coal a Ricara who is a considerable Chief of the Mandans Visited us to day, and many others of the three nations in our neighbourhood.

25th of February 1805 Saturday

All hands employed in Cutting the Perogues Loose from the ice, which was nearly even with their top; we found great difficulty in effecting this work owing to the Different divisions of Ice & water. after Cutting as much as we Could with axes, we had all the Iron we Could get, & some axes put on long poles and picked through the ice, under the first water, which was not more the [than] 6 or 8 inches Deep, we disengaged one Perogue, and nearly disengaged the 2nd in Course of this day which has been worm & pleasant vis'ed by a No of Indians, Jessomme & family went to the Shoe Indians Villag to day.

The father of the Boy whose feet were frozen near this place, and nearly Cured by us, took him home in a Slay.

24th February Sunday 1805

The Day fine, we Commenced very early to day the Cutting loose the boat which was more dificuelt than the Perogus with great exertions and with the assistance of Great prises we lousened her, and turned the Second perogue upon the ice, ready to Draw out, in lousening the boat from the ice Some of the Corking drew out which CAUSED her to Leake for a few minits until we Descovered the Leake & Stoped it. Jessomme our interpreter & familye returned from the Villages Several Indians visit us to day.

25th of February Mandan 1805

We fixed a Windlass and Drew up the two Perogues on the upper bank, and attempted the Boat, but the Roap, which we hade made of Elk skins proved too weak & broke Several times. night Comeing on obliged us to leave her in a Situation
but little advanced. We were visited by the Black moclcerson Chief of the little Village of the Big Bellies, the Chief of the Shoe Ind and a number of others those Chiefs gave us Some meat which they packed on their wives, and one requested a ax to be made for his Sun, M' (Root) Bunch, one of the under traders for the hudsons Bay Company. one of the Big Bellies asked leave for himself & his two wives to Stay all night, which was granted, also two Boys Stayed all night, one the Sun of the Black Cat.

The Day has been exceedingly pleasant

26th February Tuesday 1805

a fine Day Commenced verry early in makeing preparations for drawing up the Boat on the bank, at Sunset by Repeated exertions the whole day, we accomplished this troublesom task, just as we were fixed for hauling the Boat, the ice gave way near us for about 100 yd in length. a number of Indians here to day to See the Boat rise on the Bank.

27th of February Wednesday 1805

a find day, preparing the Tools to make perogues all day, a few Indians Visit us to day, one the largest Indian I ever Saw, & as large a man as ever I saw, I commence a Map of the Countray on the Missouries & its water &c. &c. —

28th of February Thursday 1805

a fine morning, two men of the NW Comp' arrive with letters and Sackacomah, also a Root and top of a plant, presented by M' Haney, for the Cure of Mad Dogs Snakes &c. and to be found & used as follows viz: "this root is found on the high lands and asent of hills, the way of useing it is to scarify the part when bitten to chu or pound an inch or more if the root is Small, and applying it to the bitten part renewing it twice a

1 Probably a corrupt form of sacacommi, a name applied to the bear-berry (Arctostaphylos), of which the Indians eat the berry, and often use the bark in preparing the smoking-mixture called Haukran. — Ed.
Day, the bitten person is not to chew nor swallow any of the Root for it might have contrary effect."

Sent out 16 men to make four Perogus those men returned in the evening and informed that they found trees they thought would answer.

M. Gravelin two Frenchmen & two Ind. arrive from the Ricara Nation with Letters from Mr. Anty Tabeaux, informing us of the peaceable dispositions of that nation towards the Mandans & Me ne ta ree & their avowed intentions of pursuing our councils & advice, they express a wish to visit the Mandans, & [to] know if it will be agreeable to them to admit the Ricaras to settle near them and join them against their Common Enemy the Soues. We mentioned this to the Mandans, who observed they had always wished to be at peace and good neighbours with the Ricaras, and it is also the Sentiments of all the Big belles, & Shoe nations.

Mr. Gravelin informs that the Ninears and the 3 upper bands of the Tetons, with the Yanktons of the North intend to come to war in a short time against the nations in this quarter, & will kill every white man they see. M. T. also informs that Mr. Cameron of St. Peters has put arms into the hands of the Soues to revenge the death of 3 of his men killed by the Chipaways latterly, and that the Band of tetons which we saw is disposed to do as we have advised them, thro the influence of their Chief the Black Buffalo.

M. Gravelin further informs that the Party which Roped us of the 2 horses laterly were all Sioux 106 in number, they Called at the Recaras on their return, the Recaras being despleased at their Conduet would not give them any thing to eat, that being the greatest insult they Could peaceably offer them, and upbraded them.

1 Cit. Marquette’s account of a similar remedy (Jour. Relations, v. 1, p. 191) and note thereon (p. 368). Coues mentions (U. and C., i, pp. 238, 239), several plants which have in frontier tradition the reputation of curing snake-bite; but he adds: “Everybody knows the plant, except the botanists.” Although unable to identify it, he thinks that there is some basis of fact for so universal a belief. See fuller description of this plant, post, in Scientific Data: Botany.” — Ed.

2 Murdoch Cameron, a trader whose headquarters were on St. Peter’s (now Minnesota) River; he was accused of selling liquor to the Indians. He became wealthy in the Indian trade, and died in 1811. See Coues’s Exp. Pike, i, p. 65. — Ed.
March 1st, 1805

a fine Day  I am engaged in Copying a Map,† men building perogus, makeing Ropes, Burning Coal, Hanging up meat & makeing battle axes for Corn

2nd of March 1805 Saturday —

a fine Day  the river brake up in places  all engaged about Something  M' LaRocque a Clerk of the NW Company visit us, he has latterly returned from the Establishments on the Assiniboin River, with Merchindize to trade with Indians. M' L informs us the N.W, & XY 2 Companies have joined, & the head of the N.W, C is Dead M' McTavish of Montreal, visited by the Coal & Several Indians.

3rd of March Sunday 1805

a fine Day Wind from the NW, a large flock of Ducks pass up the River visited by the black Cat, Chief of the Mandans 2nd Chief and a Big Belley, they Stayed but a Short time  we informed those Chiefs of the news receiv'd from the Recaras, all hands employ'd.

4th March Monday 1805 Fort Mandan

a cloudy morning wind from the NW  the after part of the day Clear, visited by the Black Cat & Big white, who brought a Small present of meat, an Engage of the NW Co: Came for a horse, and requested in the name of the woman of the principal of his Department some Silk of three Colours, which we furnished. The Assiniboins who visited the Mandans a few days ago, returned and attempted to take horses of the Minetarees & were fired on by them.

† The several maps made by Clark during the expedition will be found either in the various text volumes of this series, or in the accompanying atlas. — Ed.

2 Regarding the North West Company, see p. 206, note 1, ante. The X Y Company (also known as New Northwest Company) was formed in 1795, by Montreal merchants who seceded from the North West Company, mainly on account of the arbitrary acts of its chief, Simon McTavish; his death (July, 1804) led to the union of the two companies, on the 5th of November following. See Bryce's Hist. H. E. C. pp. 147-155. The agreement of Nov. 5 is given by Masson (Bourg. N.-O., ii, pp. 482-499). — Ed.
A fine Day, Thermometer at 40 above o. Several Indians Visit us to day one frenchman Cross to join a Indian, the two to pass through by Land to the Ricaras with a Letter to M' Tabbow

a cloudy morning & Smokey all Day from the burning of the plains, which was set on fire by the Minetarries for an early crop of Grass, as an enduement for the Buffalow to feed on, the horses which was Stolen Some time ago by the Assiniboins from the Minetarries were returned yesterday. Visited by Oh-hark or the Little fox 2 Chief of the lower Village of the Mc ne tarrees. one man Shannon Cut his foot with the ads [adze] in working at the perogue, George & Gravelene go to the Village, the river rise a little to day.

a little cloudy and windey, NE. the Coal Visited us with a Sick child, to whom I gave Some of rushes' pills. Shabounar returned this evening from the Gross Ventres & informed that all the nation had returned from the hunting — he (our Menetarre interpreter) had received a present from M' Chaboillez of the N.W. Company of the following articles 3 Brace of Cloth 1 Brace of Scarlet a par Corduroy overalls 1 Vests 1 Brace Blu Cloth, 1 Brace red or Scorlet with 3 bars, 200 balls & Powder, 2 brace's Tobacco, 3 Knives.

a fair Morning cold and wind, from the East, visited by the Greesey head & a Ricara to day, those men gave Some account of the Indians near the rockey Mountains — a young Indian (Minetarre) same nation & different village,
Stole the Doughter of the Black man (Mandan), he went to his village took his horse & returned & took away his daughter.¹

9th of March Saturday 1805

A Cloudy Cold and windey morning wind from the North. I walked up to see the Party that is making Perogues, about 5 miles above this, the wind hard and Cold, on my way up I met the (The Borgne) Main Chief of the Manetarres, with four Indians on their way to see us, (see note of 9 March after 10th Mar 1805), I requested him to proceed on to the fort, where he would find Capt. Lewis I should be there myself in cors of a few hours, Sent the interpeter back with him and proceeded on myself to the Canoes found them nearly fin[j]shed, the timber very bad (Qu x), after visiting all the perogues where I found a number of Indians, I wind [went] to the upper mandan Village & smoked a pipe (the greatest mark of friendship and attention) with the Chief and returned on my return found the Manetarree Chief about Setting out on his return to his Village, having received of Captain M. Lewis a Medel Gorget armiband[s], a Flag Shirt, scarlet &c. &c. &c. for which he was much pleased, those things were given in place of Sundery articles Sent to him which he Sais he did not receive, 2 guns were fired for this Great man.²

10th of March Sunday 1805

A cold winday Day, we are visited by the Black Mockers, Chief of the 2d Minetarre Village and the Chief of the Shoeman Village (Shoe or Mocassin Tr.) or Mah há ha V. (Wattassans) those Chiefs Stayed all day and the latter all night, and gave us man[v] Strang[e] accounts of his nation &c.

¹ More clearly worded by Biddle (i, p. 169), thus: "The father went to the village and found his daughter, whom he brought home, and took with him a horse belonging to the offender" — this last by way of reprisal, according to Indian custom, which is practically law among them. — En.

² This chief had lost an eye, hence his nickname of Le Borgne ("the one-eyed"). Biddle inserts several curious incidents illustrating the character of this chief, who was unusually ferocious and unscrupulous. See Brackenridge, Journal of a Voyage up the River Missouri (Baltimore, 1816), p. 161, for an account of Le Borgne. — En.
this Little tribe or band of Menetarees call themselves Ahnah-hâ-way or people whose Village is on the Hill. (Insert this Ahnahaway is the nation Mahbaha the village) this little nation formerley lived about 30 miles below this, but being oppressed by the Assinniboins & Sons were Compelled to move near (5 miles) the Menetarees, where, the Assinniboins killed the most of them, those remaining built a village very near to the Menetarries at the mouth of Knife R where they now live, and Can raise about 50 men, they are intermixed with the Mandans & Menetarries. the Mandans formerly lived in 6 (nine) large Villages at and above the mouth of Chis-cheter or Heart River four (Six) Villages on the West Side (of the Missouri) & two (three) on the East one of those Villages on the East Side of the Missouri & the larges[ ] was entirely Cut off by the Seaux & the greater part of the other and the Small Pox reduced the others.

11: of March Mdoai 1805

A Cloudy Cold windely day, Some Snow in the latter part of the day, we deturmin to have two other Perogus made for to transport our Provisions &c.

We have every reason to believe that our Menetarre interpreter (whome we intended to take with his wife, as an interpreter through his wife to the Snake Indians of which nation She is) has been Corrupted by the [blank in MS] Company &c. Some explanation has taken place which Clearly proves to us the fact, we give him to night to reflect and deturmin whether or not he intends to go with us under the regulations Stated.

12. a fine day Some Snow last night our Interpreter Shabonah, deturmins on not proceeding with us as an interpreter under the terms mentioned yesterday, he will not agree to work let our Situation be what it may nor Stand a guard, and if miffed with any man he wishes to return when he pleases, also have the disposal of as much provisions as he Chuses to Carry in admissable and we Suffer him to be off the engagement which was only virbal Wind NW

[ 271 ]
13* of March Wednesday 1805

a fine day visited by M' M' Kinzey one of the Clerks of the NW. Company, the river rising a little. Maney Ind. here to day all anxiety for war axes the Smiths have not an hour of Idle time to Spear wind SW.

14* March Thursday 1805. —

a fine day Set all hands to Shelling Corn &c. M' M' Kinsey leave us to day Many Indians as usual. wind west river Still rising.

15* of March Friday 1805 —

a fine day I put out all the goods, & Parch[ed] meal Clothing &c to Sun, a number of Indians here to day they make maney remarks respecting our goods &c. Set Some men about Hulling Corn &c.

16* of March Saturday 1805 —

a cloudy day wind from the S.E. one Indian much displeased with white-house for Strikeing his hand when eating, with a Spoon for behaving badly. M' Garrow show's us the way the recaras made their large Beeds.

[Lewis:] 1

M' Garrow a Frenchman who has lived many years with the Ricares & Mandans shewed us the process used by those Indians to make beads. The discovery of this art these nations are said to have derived from the Snake Indians who have been taken prisoners by the Ricaras. the art is kept a secret by the Indians among themselves and is yet known to but few of them. the Prosess is as follows. — Take glass of as many different colours as you think proper, then pound it as fine as possible, putting each colour in a separate vessel. wash the pounded Glass in several waters throwing off the water at

1 This entry, written by Lewis under date of March 16, is in the MS. inserted after the entry for March 21. — Ed.
each washing, continue this operation as long as the pounded glass stains or colours the water which is poured off and the residuum is then prepared for use. you then provide an earthen pot of convenient size say of three gallons which will stand the fire; a platter also of the same material sufficiently small to be admitted in the mouth of the pot or jar. the pot has a notch in its edge through which to watch the beads when in blast. you then provide some well seasoned clay with a proportion of sand sufficient to prevent it's becoming very hard when exposed to the heat. this clay must be tempered with water until it is about the consistency of common doe. of this clay you then prepare, a sufficient number of little sticks of the size you wish the hole through the head, which you do by rolling the clay on the palm of the hand with your finger. this done put those sticks of clay on the platter and expose them to a red heat for a few minutes when you take them off and suffer them to cool. the pot is also heated to eles [cleanse] it perfectly of any filth it may contain. small balls of clay are also made of about an ounce weight which serve each as a pedestal for a bead. these while soft are distributed over the face of the platter at such a distance from each other as to prevent the beads from touching. some little wooden paddles are now provided from three to four inches in length sharpened or brought to a point at the extremity of the handle. with this paddle you place in the palm of the hand as much of the wet pounded glass as is necessary to make the bead of the size you wish it. it is then arranged with the paddle in an oblong from [form], laying one of those little stick of clay crosswise over it; the pounded glass by means of the paddle is then roped in cylindrical form around the stick of clay and gently roled by motion of the hand backwards an forwards untill you get it as regular and smooth as you conveniently can. if you wish to introduce any other colour you now purforate the surface of the bead with the pointed end of your little paddle and fill up the cavity with other pounded glass of the colour you wish forming the whole as regular as you can. a hole is now made in the center of the little pedestals of clay with the handle of your shovel sufficiently large
to admit the end of the stick of clay arround which the bead is formed. The beads are then arranged perpendicularly on their pedestals and little distance above them supported by the little sticks of clay to which they are attached in the manner before mentioned. Thus arranged the platter is deposited on burning coals or hot embers and the pot reversed with the appature in its edge turned towards covers the whole. dry wood pretty much doteed (doughted) is then placed arron (around) the pot in such manner as compleatly to cover it. [It] is then set on fire and the opperator must shortly after begin to watch his beads through the appature of the pot le[st] they should be destroyed by being over heated. he suffers the beads to acquire a deepred heat from which when it passes in a small degree to a paler or whitish red, or he discovers that the beads begin to become pointed at their upper extremities he removes the fire from about the pot and suffers the whole to cool gradually. the pot is then removed and the beads taken out. the clay which fills the hollow of the beads is picked out with an awl or needle. the bead is then fit for use. The Indians are extremly fond of the large beads formed by this process. they use them as pendants to their years, or hair and sometimes wear them about their necks.2

[Clark:

17th of March Sunday —

a windey Day attempted to air our goods &c. M. Chabonah Sent a Frenchman of our party [to say] that he was Sorry for the foolish part he had acted and if we pleased he would accompany us agreeabley to the terms we had proposd and doe every thing we wished him to doe &c. &c. he

1 A variant of "doted," which Century Dictionary regards as an English provincialism; it means "decayed," or "rotted." Coues states that he had heard this word in North Carolina, applied to trees dead at the top, also to lumber prepared from unsound trees. — Ed.

2 Catlin also mentions this manufacture of glass beads by the Mandans, and their exclusive possession of the art (N. Amer. Inds., ii, p. 261). But Matthews says that the Arikara women also have it; he thinks that these peoples made "glazed earthen ornaments before the whites came among them" (Hidatsa, pp. 22, 23). — Ed.

[274]
AT FORT MANDAN

had requested me Some thro our French inturpreter two days ago to excuse his Simplicity and take him into the service, after he had taken his things across the River we called him in and Spoke to him on the Subject, he agreed to our terms and we agreed that he might go on with us &c. &c. but few Indians here to day, the river rising a little and Severall places open.

18th of March 1805

a Cold Cloudy Day wind from the N. I pack up all the Merchandize into 8 packs equally divided So as to have Something of every thing in each Canoe & perogee I am informed of a Party of Christanoes & Assinniboins being killed by the Sioux, 50 in Number near the Establishments on the Assinniboin R. a few days ago (the effect of M' Cammerons revenge on the Chipaways for killing 3 of his men) M: Tousent Chabono [Toussaint Charboneau], Enlisted as Interpreter this evening, I am not well to day,

19th of March 1805

Cold windey Day Cloudy Some little Snow last night visited to Day by the big white & Little Crow, also a man & his wife with a Sick Child, I administer for the child We are told that two parties are gone to war from the Big bellies and one other party going to war Shortly.

20th March Wednesday 1805

I with all the men which could be Speared from the Fort went to Canoes, there I found a number of Indians, the men carried 4 to the River about 1 1/2 miles thro' the Bottom, I visited the Chief of the Mandans in the Course of the Day and Smoked a pipe with himself and Several old men. Cloudy wind hard from N.
a Cloudy Day Some Snow, the men Carried the remaining Canoes to the River, and all except 3 left to take care & complete the Canoes returned to the fort with their baggage, on my return to day to the Fort I came on the points of the high hills, Saw an emence quantity of Pumice Stone on the Sides & foot of the hills and emence beds of Pumice Stone near the Tops of the[m], with evident marks of the Hills having once been on fire, I Collected Some [of] the different [sorts] i.e. Stone Pumice Stone & a hard earth, and put them into a furnace, the hard earth melted and glazed the others two and the hard Clay became a pumice Stone Glazed. I collected Some plants &c.
CHAPTER VII

FROM FORT MANDAN TO THE YELLOWSTONE

Clark's Journal, March 25—April 27.
Lewis's Journal, April 7-27.

A CLOUDY Day visited by M. La[r]ock, M Kinsey and the 2 Chief of the Big bellies, the white wolf and many other Minataries, we Gave a Medal some Clothes and wampom to the 2[nd] Chief and Delivered a Speech which they all appeared well pleased with in the evening the men Danced M. Jessomme displeased.

277
25th (24th) of March Sunday 1805 —

A Cloudy morning wind from the NE the after part of the Day fair, Several Indians visit us to day, preparing to Set out on our journey, Saw Swans & Wild Gees flying N.E. this evening.

26th (25th) of March Monday 1805 —

A fine Day wind S.W. but few Ind' Visit us to day the Ice haveing broken up in Several places, The ice began to brake away this evening and was near destroying our Canoes as they were dec[e]nding to the fort, river rose only 9 Inches to day preparing to Depart.

27th (26th) of March Tuesday 1805 —

The river choked up with ice opposit to us and broke away in the evening raised only 1/2 Inch all employed preparing to Set out.

28th (27th) of March Friday (Wednesday) 1805 —

A windey Blustering Day Wind S W ice running the [ice] Blocked up in view for the Space of 4 hours and gave way leaving great quantity of ice on the Shallow Sand bars. had all the Canoes corked [calked] pitched & tined in and on the cracks and windshake which is universally in the Cotton wood.

29th (28th) of March Saturday (Thursday) 1805 —

The ice has stoped running owing to Som obstickle above, repare the Boat & Perogues, and preparing to Set out but few Indians visit us to day they are now attending on the river bank to Catch the floating Buffalow

30th (29th) of March Sunday (Friday) 1805 —

The obstickle broke away above & the ice came down in great quantities the river rose 13 inches the last 24 hours I observed extrodanary dexterity of the Indians in jumping from one cake of ice to another, for the purpose of Catching the
buffalow as they float down¹ many of the cakes of ice which they pass over are not two feet square. The Plains are on fire in View of the fort on both Sides of the River, it is Said to be common for the Indians to burn the Plains near their Villages every Spring for the benefit of their horses, (Qθ) and to induce the Buffalow to come near to them.

51. (52) Saturday of March Mandan (Saturday) (Sunday) 1805

(See, Ordinary note here) Cloudy Day. Several Gangs of Gees and Ducks pass up the river. but a Small portion of ice floating down to day, but few Ind. Visit us to day. all the party in high Spirits they pass but few nights without amusing themselves dancing possessing perfect harmony and good understanding towards each other. Generally helthy except Venearials Complaints which is very Common amongst the natives (Qθ) and the men Catch it from them.

April the 1st. Tuesday (Monday) 1805

The fore part of to day haile rain with Thunder & lightning, the rain continued by intimations all day, it is worthy of remark that this is the 1st rain which has fallen Sence we have been here or Sence the 15 of October last, except a few drops at two or three different times had the Boat Perogues & Canoes all put into the Water.

April the 2d. Friday (Tuesday) 1805

a cloudy day, rained all the last night we are preparing to Set out all thing nearly ready. The 2d Chief of the 2d Mandan Village took a miff at our not attending to him particularly after being here about ten days and moved back to his village.

The Mandans Kiled twenty one elk yesterday 15 miles below this, they were So Meager that they [were] Sceerely fit for use.

¹ Biddle describes the manner in which the Indians capture buffaloes which, trying to cross the river, have become isolated on ice-logs. Mackenzie (at supra, p. 337) states that the Indians on the Missouri also search eagerly for the carcasses of buffaloes and other drowned animals that float down the river in the spring season; these, although rotten and of intolerable stench, "are preferred by the Natives to any other kind of food. . . . So fond are the Mandanes of putrid meat that they bury animals whole in the winter for the consumption of the spring." — Ed.
April 3rd Thursday (Wednesday) 1805 —

A white frost this morning, some ice on the edge of the water, a fine day. Pack up and prepare to load.

Observed equal altitudes of the \( \odot \) with Sextant and artificial horizon.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Distance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A.M.</td>
<td>5 H. - 51 m - 15 s.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>52 - 52.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>54 - 30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Altitude produced from this observation is \( 36\degree - 31\prime - 15\prime \). Chronometer too fast 32 minutes.

Observed time and distance of \( \odot \) & \( \odot \) nearest limbs with the Sextant and Chronometer — Sun west.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Distance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PM. 5 H. - 15 M. - 50 s.</td>
<td>43\degree - 27\prime - 15\prime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>- 18 - 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>- 29 - 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>- 34 - 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>- 36 - 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>- 39 - 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td>- 40 - 55</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Mr. La Rocke & Mr. Kinsey Clerk to the N W. Comp. Visit us. Mr. M'Kinsey wishes to get pay for his horse lost in our Service this Winter and one of which our men were robbed this Winter by the Teton, we shall pay this man for his horse. We are all day engaged packing up sundry articles to be sent to the President of the U.S.\(^1\)

Box No. 1, contains the following articles i.e.

In package No. 3 & 4 male & female antelope, with their skeletons.

\(^1\) Some of the articles were long on exhibition at Monticello. Others passed to Peale's Museum in Philadelphia, and there some of the specimens are still to be found. See note by Witmer Stone, on "Zoology of the Lewis and Clark Expedition," in "Scientific Data: Zoology," Vol. vi of the present work. — Ed.
N° 7 & 9. the horns of two male of Black tailed Deer. a Mandan bow and quiver of arrows — with some Ricarás tobacco seed.
N° 11. a Martin Skin. Containing the tail of a Male Deer; a weasel and three Squirrels from the Rocky mountains.
N° 12. The horns & Skeleton of a Small burrowing Wolt of the Prairies the Skin being lost by accident.
N° 99. The Skeleton of the white and Grey hare.

Box No. 2. Contains 4 Buffalow robes, and a car of Mandan Corn.
The large Trunk Contains a male & female Bees or burrowing dog of the Prairie and the female's Skeleton,
a carrote of Ricaras Tobacco
a red fox Skin Containing a Magpie
N° 14. Minicara's Buffalow robe Containing Some articles of Indian dress.
N° 15. a mandan robe containing two burrowing Squirrels, a white weasel and the Skin of a Loucurvia. Also
1 red box Skins.
1 white Hare Skin &c.
3 horns of the mountain ram
1 robe representing a battle between the Sioux & Ricaras against the Minetarees and Mandans.

In Box No. 3.
No. 1 & 2. the Skins of the Male & female Antelope with their Skeletons. & the Skin of a Yellow Bear which I obtained from the Minicara.

N° 4. Box. Specimens of plants numbered from 1. to 67.
Specimens of Plants numbered from 1. to 62.
1 Earthen pot Such as the Mandans manufacture and use for culinary purposes.
1 Tin box containing insects mice &c.
1 Specimen of the fur of the antilope.
1 Specimen of a plant, and a parcel of its roots highly prized by the natives as an efficacious remedy in cases of the bite of the rattl-snake or Mad Dog.

1 Catlin says (N. Amer. Ind., pp. 260, 261) that specimens of the pottery taken from the burial mounds in Ohio "were to be seen in great numbers in the use of the Mandans; and scarcely a day in the summer, when the visitor to their village would not see the women at work with their hands and fingers, moulding them from black clay, into cases, cups, pitchers, and pots, and baking them in their little kilns in the sides of the hill, or under the bank of the river." — Ed.
In a large Trunk

1. Skin of a male and female Braro, or burrowing Dog of the Prairie, with the Skeleton of the female.
2. Skin of the red fox Containing a Magpie
3. Cased Skins of the white hare.
4. Minitarra Buffalo robe Containing Some articles of Indian Dress.
5. Mandan Buffalo robe Containing a dressed Lousirva Skin, and 4 cased Skins of the Burrowing Squirrel of the Prairies.
6. 13 red fox Skins
7. Horns of the Mountain Ram, or big horn.
8. Buffalo robe painted by a mandan man representing a battle fought 8 years since by the Sioux & Recaras against the mandans, menitarras & Ah wah har ways. (Mandans &c. on horseback)

Cage N° 6.
- Contains a liveing burrowing Squirrel of the praries

Cage N° 7.
- Contains 4 liveing Magpies

Cage N° 9.
- Containing a liveing hen of the Prairie
- a large par of Elks horns containing [contained, i.e., held together — Ed.] by the frontal bone.

April the 4th 1805 Wednesday (Thursday) —

a blustering wind ye Day the Clerks of the N W Co. leave us, we are arrangeing all things to Set out. &c.

April the 5th 1805 Thursday (Friday) —

we have our 2 perouges & Six Canoes loaded with our Stores & provisions, principally provisions. the wind verry high from the NW. a number of Mandans Visit us to day

1 Repetition of the contents of "the large trunk," mentioned above. — Ed.
2 Gass here mentions the prevalence of licentiousness among the Indians on the Missouri. — Ed.
a fine day visited by a number of Mandans, we are informed of the arrival of the whole of the recarra nation on the other side of the river near their old village, we sent an interpreter to see with orders to return immediately and let us know if their Chiefs went to go down to see their great father.

[Fort Mandan April 25th, 1805]

Having on this day at 4 P.M. completed every arrangement necessary for our departure, we dismissed the barge and crew with orders to return without loss of time to St. Louis, a small canoe with two French hunters accompanied the barge; these men had assisted the Missouri with us the last year as engages. The barge crew consisted of six soldiers and two [blank space in MS.] Frenchmen; two Frenchmen and a Ricara Indian also take their passage in her as far as the Ricara Villages, at which place we expect Mr. Tiebeau [Tabeau] to embark with his peltry who in that case will make an addition of two, perhaps four men to the crew of the barge. We gave Richard Warfington, a discharged Corp, the charge of the Barge and crew, and confided to his care likewise our dispatches to the government, letters to our private friends, and a number of articles to the President the United States. One of the Frenchmen by the name of (Joseph) Gravline an honest discreet man and an excellent boat-man is employed to conduct the barge as a pilot; we have therefore every hope that the barge and with her our dispatches will arrive safe at St. Louis. Mr. Gravlin

---

1 At this point begins Codex D, which is entirely in Lewis's handwriting, and continues the journal of the expedition until May 23, 1804. — Ed.
2 These were Francois Rivet and Philippe Degie, whom the explorers met on their return journey Aug. 21, 1806. Mrs. E. E. Dye writes to us that they afterward went to Oregon and settled in Champoeg, and were locally celebrated as being men who had been with Lewis and Clark. — Ed.
3 Cones (L. and C., i, pp. 253-262) gives in his notes on this entry all the information he could gather regarding the personnel of the party which left Fort Mandan to continue their transcontinental explorations; he also cites a letter by Lewis, which explains how Corporal Warfington came to be retained on the muster-roll after his term of service had expired. He was the only one of the party returning to St. Louis whom Lewis could entrust with his dispatches to the government, and his commander praises his fidelity. — Ed.
who speaks the Ricara language extremely well, has been im-
ployed to conduct a few of the Recara Chiefs to the seat of
government who have promised us to descend in the barge to
S: Lewis with that view.

At same moment that the Barge departed from Fort Man-
dan, Capt. Clark embarked with our party and proceeded up
the River. as I had used no exercise for several weeks, I
determined to walk on shore as far as our encampment of this
evening; accordingly I continued my walk on the N. side of
the River about six miles, to the upper Village of the Mandans,
and called on the Black Cat or Pose-cop'-se-ha', the great chief
of the Mandans; he was not at home; I rested myself a [few]
minutes, and finding that the party had not arrived I returned
about 2 miles and joined them at their encampment on the N.
side of the river opposite the lower Mandan village. Our part[y]
now consisted of the following Individuals. Serg'. John Ordway, Nathaniel Prior, & Patric Gass; Privates, William
Bratton, John Colter, Reubin, and Joseph Fields, John
Shields, George Gibson, George Shannon, John Potts, John
Collins, Joseph Whitehouse, Richard Windsor, Alexander
Willard, Hugh Hall, Silas Goodrich, Robert Frazier, Peter
Crouzatt, John Baptiest la Page, Francis Labiech, Hue M'.Neal,
William Warner, Thomas P. Howard, Peter Wiser, and John
B. Thompson. Interpreters, George Drewyer and Tausant
Charbono also a Black man by the name of York, servant
to Capt. Clark, an Indian Woman wife to Charbono with a
young child, and a Mandan man who had promised us to
accompany us as far as the Snake Indians with a view to bring
about a good understanding and friendly intercourse between
that nation and his own, the Minetares and Ahwaharways.

Our vessels consisted of six small canoes, and two large
perogues. This little fleet altho' not quite so respectable as
those of Columbus or Capt. Cook, were still viewed by us
with as much pleasure as those deservedly famed adventurers
ever beheld theirs; and I dare say with quite as much anxiety
for their safety and preservation. we were now about to pen-
trate a country at least two thousand miles in width, on which
the foot of civilized man had never trodden; the good or evil

[284]
it had in store for us was for experiment yet to determine, and
these little vessels contained every article by which we were
to expect to subsist or defend ourselves. however, as the
state of mind in which we are, generally gives the colouring to
events, when the immagination is suffered to wander into
futurity, the picture which now presented itself to me was a
most pleasing one. enterprising as I do, the most confident
hope of succeeding in a voyage which had formed a da[r]ling
project of mine for the last ten years, I could but esteem this
moment of my departure as among the most happy of my life.
The party are in excellent health and spirits, zealously attached
to the enterprise, and anxious to proceed; not a whisper of
murmur or discontent to be heard among them, but all in unison,
and with the most perfect harmony. I took an early
supper this evening and went to bed. Capt. Clark myself the
two Interpreters and the woman and child sleep in a tent of
dressed skins. this tent is in the Indian stile, formed of a
number of dressed Buffaloe skins sewed together with sinuces.
1
it is cut in such manner that when folded double it forms the
quarter of a circle, and is left open at one side where it may be
attached or loosened at pleasure (2q) by strings which are
sewed to its sides for the purpose. to erect this tent, a parcel
of ten or twelve poles are provided, fore or five of which are
attached together at one end, they are then elivated and their
lower extremities are spread in a circular manner to a width
proportionate to the diminution of the lodge; in the same
position other poles are leant against those, and the leather is
then thrown over them forming a conic figure.

[Clark:]

a windey day. The Interpreter we Sent to the Villages
returned with Chief of the Ricara's & 3 men of that nation,

1 Catlin enumerates (N. Amer. Ind., i, p. 262) the many uses made by the Indians
of the buffalo in their domestic economy — for food, clothing, implements, weapons,
etc. — Ed.

2 We obtain Clark's journal from April - July 3, 1805 (except where otherwise
noted) from Clark-Voorhis note-book No. 1; save that the first Clark entry of
April 4 is from Codex C of the Philadelphia collection. — Ed.
this Chief informed us that he was Sent by his nation to know the despositions of the nations in this neighbourhood in respect to the recara's Settleing near them, that he had not yet made those arrangements, he request that we would speek to the Assinniboins, & Crow Ind: in their favour, that they wished to follow our directions and be at peace with all, he viewed all nations in this quarter well disposed except the Sioux. The wish of those recaras appears to be a junction with the Mandans & Minetarras in a Defensive war with the Sioux who rob them of every Spece [species] of property in Such a manner that they cannot live near them any longer. I told this Chief we were glad to See him, and we viewed his nation as the Dutifull Children of a Great father who would extend his protection to all those who would open their ears to his good advice, we had already Spoken to the Assinniboins, and should Speeke to the Crow Indians if we should see them &c. as to the Sioux their Great father would not let them have any more good Guns &c. would take care to prosu Such measurs as would provent those Sioux from Murl[er]ing and taking the property from his dutyfull red Children &c. we gave him a certificate of his good Conduct & a Small Medal, a Carrot of Tobacco and a String of Wompom. he requested that one of his men who was lame might decend in the boat to their nation and returned to the Mandans well Satisfied. The name of this Chief of War is Kah-kah, We-to — Raven brave. This Chief delivered us a letter from M: Taboe, informing us of the wish of the Grand Chiefs of the Recarras to visit their Great father and requesting the privilage of put'g on board the boat 3000° of Skins &c. & adding 4 hands and himself to the party. this proposeal we Shall agree to, as that addition will make the party in the boat 15 Strong and more able to defend themselves from the Seoux &c.'

1 Here ends the daily record kept by Clark, as contained in Codex C. The rest of the codex is occupied with matter outside of that record, which will be found in "Scientific Data." Towards the close of the codex is Clark's sketch map of the Red and St. Peter's Rivers, herewith reproduced. — Ed.

[ 286 ]
Red and St. Peter's Rivers,
sketch-plan by Clark.
Sunday, at 4 oClock PM, the Boat, in which was 6 Soldiers, 2 frenchmen & an Indian, all under the command of a corporal who had the charge of dispatches, &c. — and a canoe with 2 french men, Set out down the river for St. Louis, at the same time we Set out on our voyage up the river in 2 perogues and 6 canoes, and proceeded on to the 1st Villag. of Mandans & camped on the S.S. our party consisting of Serg' Nathaniel Pryor, Sg' John Ordway, Sg' Pat. Gass, William Bratten, John Colter Joseph & Reuben Fields. John Shields George Gibson George Shannon, John Potts, John Collins, Jos: Whitehouse, Richard Windsor, Alexander Willard, Hugh Hall, Silas Gutrich, Robert Frazure, Peter Crouzat, John Baptiste la page, Francis Labich, Hugh Mc Neal, William Warner, Thomas P. Howard, Peter Wiser, J. B. Thompson and my servant York, George Drew yer who acts as a hunter & interpreter, Shabonah and his Indian Squar to act as an Interpreter & interpretress for the snake Indians — one Mandan & Shabonahs infant. Sah-kab-gar we are.

Near the present Hancock, N. D. — Ed.
camped and brought with him a woman who was extremly solicitous to accompany one of the men of our party, this however we positively refused to permit.

Courses distances and references for Ap. 8th.

From the upper point on an island (being the point to which Capt. Clark took his last course when he ascended the river in surch of a place for winter quarters rst November last) to a point of wood land Star'd side, passing a high bluff on the Lar'd. N. 40°. W. 3½°.

[Clark:
8th of April Monday 1805

Set out very early wind hard a head from the N.W. proceeded on passed all the villages the inhabitants of which flocked down in great numbers to view us, I took my leave of the great Chief of the Mandans who gave me a par of excellent mockersons, one canoe filed with water every thing in her got wet 1/3 of a barrel of powder lost by this accident.

From the upper part of an island just below Marpar-percycopatoo's camp to a point of wood land on the Sta'd side passing a high bluff on the Lar's containing many horizontal narrow stratas of Carbonate wood, some of which are sixty feet above the su[rf]ace of the water

Camped on the S.S. ops: a high bluff. an Indian Joined us, also an Indian woman with a view to accompany us, the woman was Sent back the man being acquainted with the countrey we allowed him to accompanie us

[Lewis:
Tuesday April 9th

Set out as early as it was possible to see this morning and proceed about five miles where we halted and took beakfas the Indian man who had promised us to accompany us as far as the Snake Indians, now informed us of his intention to relinquish the journey, and accordingly returned to his village. we saw a great number of brant passing up the river, some [288]
of them were white, except the large feathers in the first and second joint of the wing which are black. There is no other difference between them and the common gray brant but that of their colour — their note and habits are the same, and they are frequently seen to associate together. I have not yet positively determined whether they are the same, or a different species. Capt. Clark walked on shore to-day and informed me on his return, that passing through the prairie he had seen an anamal that precisely resembled the burrowing squirrel, accept in point of size, it being only about one third as large as the squirrel, and that it also burrows. I have observed in many parts of the plains and praries, the work of an anamal of which I could never obtain a view. their work resembles that of the salamander common to the sand hills of the States of South Carolina and Georgia, and like that anamal also it never appears above the ground. the little hillocks which are thrown up by these anamals have much the appearance of ten or twelve pounds of loose earth poared out of a vessel on the surface of the plain. in the state they leave them you can discover no whole through which they throw out this earth; but by removing the loose earth gently you may discover that the soil has been broken in a circle manner for about an inch and a half in diameter; where it appears looser than the adjacent surface, and is certainly the place through which the earth has been thrown out, tho' the operation is performed without leaving any visible aperture. the Bluffs of the river which we passed today were upwards of a hundred feet high, formed of a mixture of yellow clay and sand — many horizontal stratas of carbonated wood, having every appearance of pitcoal at a distance; were seen in the the face of these bluffs. these stratas are of unequal thicknesses from 1 to 5 feet, and appear at different elivations above the water some of them as much as eighty feet. the hills of the river are very broken, and many of them have the appearance of having been

1 That Lewis occupied himself with writing his journal is evidenced by the entry in his weather diary for this date (Codex Fe, p. 4): “The perogue is so unsteady that I can scarcely write.” — Ed.

2 The so-called “coal” near Fort Mandan was lignite, extensive beds of which exist in that region. — Ed.
on fire at some former period. considerable quantities of pumice stone and lava appear in many parts of these hills where they are broken and washed down by the rain and melting snow. when we halted for dinner the squaw busied herself in searching for the wild artichokes which the mice\(^1\) collect and deposit in large hoards. this operation she performed by penetrating the earth with a sharp stick about some small collections of drift wood. her labour soon proved successful, and she procured a good quantity of these roots. the flavor of this root resembles that of the Jerusalem Artichoke, and the stalk of the weed which produces it is also similar, tho' both the root and stalk are much smaller than the Jerusalem Artichoke. the root is white and of an ovate form, from one to three inches in length and usually about the size of a man's finger. one stalk produces from two to four, and somtimes six of these roots.

at the distance of 6 miles passed a large wintering or hunting camp of the Minetares on the Star\(^2\) side. these lodges about thirty in number are built of earth and timber in their usual stile. 2½ miles higher we passed the entrance of Miry Creek, which discharges itself on the Star\(^2\) side. this creek is but small,— takes it's rise in some small lakes near the Mouse river and passes in it's course to the Missouri, through beatifull, level, and fertile plains, entirely destitute of timber. Three miles above the mouth of this creek we passed a hunting camp of Minetares who had prepared a park and were waiting the return of the Antelope; which usually pass the Missouri at this season of the year from the Black hills on the South side, to the open plains on the north side of the river; in like manner the Antelope repasses the Missouri from N. to South in the latter end of Autumn, and winter in the black hills, where there is considerable bodies of woodland. we proceed on 11½ miles further and encamped on the N. side in a most beatifull high extensive open bottom.\(^2\)

\(^1\) Probably gophers; Coues thinks that the burrowing animal just described by Lewis is the pouched rat or pocket-gopher (either Geomyys or Thomomys). — Ed.
\(^2\) Not far above the present Fort Stevenson. — Ed.
The courses and distances of this day are as follow:

N. 25° W. to a Star point opposite a bluff
N. 30° W. to a Star point
N. 80° E. to a sand point on Lar side
N. 15° W. to a Lar point
N. 18° W. to a handsome elevated plain on Lar S
N. 22° E. to a point of willows on Lar side opposite to a wintering camp of the Minetarees
N. 22° W. to the mouth of Myry creek Star side, passing a small run and a hill called snake den
S. 75° W. to a point on Star opposite to a camp of Minetarees, and lower part of a high bluff
N. 45° W. to the upper point of woodland on S E
S. 45° W. to a point of timber on the Lar side
S. 3° W. to a sand point on the Star side
to a hunting camp of Minetarees
S. 78° W. to a point of woodland on the Lar side

[Claire:] 9 of April Tuesday 1805

Set out this morning very early under a gentle breeze from the S.E. at Brackfast the Indian determined to return to his nation. I saw a Musquetor to day great numbers of Brant flying up the river, the Maple, & Elm have buded & arrow wood beginning to bud. I saw in the prairie an animal resembling the Prarie dog or Barking Squirel & burrow in the same way, this animal was about 1/3 as large as the barking Squirel. But few resident birds or water fowls which I have seen as yet at 6 miles passed an old hunting camp of Menitarres on the S. S. 21/2 miles higher passed the mouth of Myry Creek on the S.S. passed a hunting camp of Menetarees on the S.S. waiting the return of the Antelope. Saw Great numbers of Gees feedin in the Praries on the young grass. I saw flowers in the praries to day, juniper grows on the Sides of the hills, & runs on the ground all the hills have more or Less indifferent coal in stratas at different hites from the waters edge to 80 feet. those stratas from 1 inch to 5 feet thick we camp' on the S.S. above some rocks makeing out in the river in a butifull ellivated plain.
Course distance & references for the 4<sup>th</sup>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direction</th>
<th>Distance</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. 20° W.</td>
<td>1 mile</td>
<td>on the S. p' ops(^{d}) a Bluff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. - - -</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>mile on the S. p' ops(^{d})</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 80° E.</td>
<td>11/4</td>
<td>miles to a sand p' on the L.S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. - - -</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>a mile to the L. p'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 18° W.</td>
<td>1 mile</td>
<td>to a handsom elivated plain on L.S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 22° E.</td>
<td>11/2</td>
<td>miles to a p' of willows on the L.S. oppost a Wintering camp of the Miniteres.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 20° W.</td>
<td>21/4</td>
<td>miles to the mouth of Miry Creek, pass'd a hill called Snake house &amp; a small run S.S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West - - -</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>mile to a p' on the Larboard side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 75° W.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>miles to a p' on the S.S. ops(^{d}) a Bluff and a camp of Miniteres.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 65° W.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>miles to the upper part of the timber S.S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 45° W.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>miles to a p' of timber on the L.S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 35° W.</td>
<td>11/4</td>
<td>miles to a Sand p' on the S.S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 78° W.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>miles to a p' of wood on the L.S.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[202]

**Wednesday April 10th 1805.**

Set out at an early hour this morning, at the distance of three miles passed some Miniteres who had assembled themselves on the Lard [larboard] shore to take a view of our little fleet. Capt Clark walked on shore to-day, for several hours, when he returned he informed me that he had seen a gang of Antelopes in the plains but was unable to get a shoot at them, he also saw some geese and swan. the geese are now feeding in considerable numbers on the young grass which has sprung up in the bottom praries. the Musquetoes were very troublesome to us to-day. The country on both sides of the Missouri from the tops of the river hills, is one continued level fertile plain as far as the eye can reach, in which there is not even a solitary tree or shrub to be seen, except such as from their moist situations or the steep declivities of hills are sheltered from the ravages of the fire. at the distance of 12 miles from our encampment of last night we arrived at the lower point of a bluff on the Lard side; about 11/2 miles down this bluff from this point, the bluff is now on fire and throws out considerable quantities of smoke which has a strong sul-
The phurious smell... the appearance of the coal in the blufs continues... at 11 P.M. we overtook three French hunters who had set out a few days before us with a view of trapping beaver; they had taken 12 since they left Fort Mandan... these people avoid themselves of the protection which our numbers will enable us to give them against the Assinboins who sometimes hunt on the Missouri; and intend ascending with us... the Missouri is but moderate, at least not greater than that of the Ohio in high tide;... she's... accustomed... South... easy and safe. we encamped this evening... Star's side just above... remarkable bend... in the river to the S.W. which called the little bason.

Courses and distances of this day.

S. $45^\circ$ W. to a point of timbered land on the S. Si.
S. $72^\circ$ W. to a tree in a bend on the Star's side
S. $32^\circ$ W. to a point of woods on the Star's side
W. on the Star's point
N. $40^\circ$ W. on the Star's point
N. $50^\circ$ E. to a point on the Lar's side, opposite to a low bluff
S. $52^\circ$ W. to a point on the Star's side opposite to a bluff, above which a small creek falls in.

---

1 This region... fringe of the well-known manitoua... south, through the heart of which the Little Missouri flows. The country is underlaid with vast beds of lignite coal, which has burned out over wide area. Coal veins form lines plainly distinguishable in the hills bordering the river, and... some of these veins are... burning, and emit sulphurous odors.

2 Not far from the site of Fort Berthold, built by the American Fur Company in 1844. The name was transferred (1862) to another post, built in the Indian village. Both structures were finally destroyed by fire — the former in 1862, the latter in 1874. — Ed.
10th of April Wednesday 1805

Set out very early. The morning cool and no wind proceeded on passed a camp of Ind’ on the L.S. this day proved to be very worm, the Misquetors troublesome. I saw several antelope on the S.S. also gees & swan, we over took 3 French men Trappers. The country to day as usial except that the points of Timber is larger than below, the coal continue to day, one man saw a hill on fire at no great distance from the river, we camped on the S.S. just above a remarkable bend in the river to the S W, which We call the little basin.

Course Distance & references the 10th

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direction</th>
<th>Distance</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S. 45° W.</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>miles to a p’ of timbered land on the S.S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>miles to a p’ of timbered land on the L.S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 72° W.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>miles to a tree in an elevated plain in the bend to the S.S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 32° W.</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>miles to a p’ of wood on the S.S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West</td>
<td>½</td>
<td>a mile on the S. point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 40° W.</td>
<td>½</td>
<td>a mile on the S. point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 50° E.</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>miles to a p’ on the L.S. op’s a low bluff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 52° W.</td>
<td>3½</td>
<td>miles to a p’ on the S.S. op’s a bluff above which a small creek falls in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Thursday April 11th.

Set out at an early hour; I proceeded with the party and Capt. Clark with George Drewyer walked on shore in order to procure some fresh meat if possible. we proceeded on abot five miles, and halted for breakfast, when Capt. Clark and Drewyer joined us; the latter had killed, and brought with him a deer, which was at this moment exceptable, as we had had no fresh meat for several days. the country from fort Mandan to this place is so constantly hunted by the Minitaries that there is but little game. we halted at two P.M. and made a comfortable dinner on a venison stake and beavers tales with the biscuit which got wet on the 8th ins. by the accident of the canoe filling with water before mentioned. the powder which got wet by the same accident, and which we had spread to dry on the baggage of the large perogue, was now examined and put up; it appears to be almost restored, and
our loss is therefore not so great as we had at first apprehended, the country much the same as yesterday, on the sides of the hills and even the banks of the rivers and sand-bars, there is a white substance that appears in considerable quantities on the surface of the earth, which tastes like a mixture of common salt and glauber salts. many of the springs which flow from the base of the river hills are so strongly impregnated with this substance that the water is extremely unpleasant to the taste and has a purgative effect. saw some large white cranes pass up the river—these are the largest bird of that genus common to the country through which the Missouri and Mississippi pass, they are perfectly white except the large feathers of the two first joints of the wing which are black. we encamped this evening on the Star' shore just above the point of woodland which formed to extremity of the last course of this day. there is a high bluff opposite to us, under which we saw some Indians, but the river is here so wide that we could not speake to them; suppose them to be a hunting party of Metates. we killed two gees to-day.

The courses and distances of this day

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Distance</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| S. 85 W. to the upper point of a bluff on Lar' S | 3 | *
| N. 38 W. to a point on the Lar' shore, oppo' a bluff | 2 | *
| S. 30 W. to the upper part of a timbered bottom on the Lar' side. A large sand bar making out from the Star' side 1 1/2 miles wide | 2 | *
| N. 52 W. to a red knob in a bend to the Star' side near the upper part of a timbered bottom | 5 | *
| S. 70 W. to a point of timbered land on the Star' Sd. | 6 | *
| W. on the Star' point | 1 | *

[1] The famous "alkali" of the West, often rendering the water undrinkable, and covering great areas like snow. It consists largely or mainly of sulphate of soda. — Ed.
Set out very early I walked on Shore, saw fresh bear tracks, one deer & 2 beaver killed this morning in the after part of the day killed two gees, saw great numbers of Gees Brant & Mallard Some White Cranes Swan & gulls, the plains begin to have a green appearance, the hills on either side are from 5 to 7 miles asunder and in many places have been burnt, appearing at a distance of a redish brown choler, containing Pumice Stone & lava, some of which rolling down to the base of those hills. In many of those hills forming bluffs to the river we prosieve Several Stratums of bituminous sub-stance which resembles coal; though[ ] Some of the pieces appear to be excellent coal, it resists the fire for some[time], and consumes without emitting much flaine.

The plains are high and rich some of them are sandy containing small pebbles, and on some of the hill Sides large Stones are to be seen. In the evening late we observed a party of Menetarras on the L.S. with horses and dogs loaded going down, those are a part of the Minitarras who camped a little above this with the Ossinniboins at the mouth of the little Missouri all the latter part of the winter. we camped on the S.S. below a falling in bank. the river raise a little.

Course distance &c. the 11th
S. 85° W. 2 miles to the upper part of a Bluff in a bend to the Lardboard Side.
N. 38° W. 3 miles to a point on the L.S. ops a bluff.
S. 30° W. 2 miles to the upper part of a timbered bottom on the L.S. a large sand bar making out from the S.S. 1 mi
N 52° W. 5 miles to a red knob in a bend to the S.S. near the upper part of wood bottom.
S. 70° W. 6 miles to a timbered point on the S.S.
West 1 mile on the S. point.

[Clark:]

Friday April the 12th 1805

Set out at an early hour, our peroge and the Canoos passed over to the Lard side, in order to avoid a bank which was rapidly falling in on the Star. the red perogue contrary
to my expectation or wish passed under this bank by means of her toe line; where I expected to have seen her carried under every instant. I did not discover that she was about to make this attempt until it was too late for the men to re-embark, and retreating is more dangerous than proceeding in such cases; they therefore continued their passage up this bank, and much to my satisfaction arrived safe above it. This cost me some moments of uneasiness, her cargo was of much importance to us in our present advanced situation. We proceeded on six miles and came too on the lower side of the entrance of the little Missouri on the land shore in a fine plain where we determined to spend the day for the purpose of celestial observation, we sent out ten hunters to procure some fresh meat. At this place made the following observations.

Point of Observation No. 1.

Observed O° Magnetic Azimuth with Circumferentor S. 88° E.

Time by Chronometer A.M. 8. 25. 25.
Altitude by Sextant 52° 25'. 45".

O° Magnetic Azimuth by Circumferentor S. 87° E.

Time by Chronometer 8. 25. 22'.
Altitude by Sextant 53° 55'. 33".

Observed equal altitudes of the O° with Sextant.

A.M. 8. 32°. 11. P.M. the P.M. observation was lost in consequence of the Clouds.

". 31. 52. 5
". 35. 31.

Alt° by Sextant at the time of observation 55° 28'. 45".

Observed Meridian altitude of the O° U. L. with Octant by the back observation 81° 25'. 15".

Latitude deduced from this observation [blank space in MS.]

Remarks.

The artificial Horizon recommended by Mr. A. Ellicott, in which water forms the reflecting surface, is used in all observations which require the use of an Artificial horizon, except when expressly mentioned to the contrary.

The altitude of any object in the fore observation as here entered is

[297]
that deduced immediately from the graduated limb of the instrument, and is of course the double altitudes of the object observed.

The altitudes of objects observed by the back observation, with Octant as here entered, is that shewn by the graduated limb of the Instrument at the time of observation, and is the compliment of $180^\circ$ of the double altitude of the object observed.

Error of Sextant — Subtractive $8'.45''$

Error of Octant fore observation — $2^\circ.4'.x$

Error of $d^\circ$ in back observation add' $2^\circ.40'.-x$

The night proved so cloudy that I could make no further observations.

George Drewyer shot a Beaver this morning, which we found swimming in the river a small distance below the entrance of the little Missouri. the beaver being seen in the day, is a proof that they have been but little hunted, as they always keep themselves closely concealed during the day where they are so, found a great quantity of small onions in the plain where we encamped; had some of them collected and cooked, found them agreeable. the bulb grows single, is of an oval form, white, and about the size of a small bullet; the leaf resembles that of the shive, and the hunters returned this evening with one deer only. the country about the mouth of this river had been recently hunted by the Minetares, and the little game which they had not killed and frightened away, was so extremely shy that the hunters could not get in shoot of them.

The little Missouri disembogues on the S. side of the Missouri 1693 miles from the confluence of the latter with the Mississippi, it is 134 yards wide at its mouth, and sets in with a bould current but its greatest depth is not more than 214 feet. it's navigation is extremely difficult, owing to it's rapidity, shoals and sand bars it may however be navigated with small canoes a considerable distance. this river passes through the Northern extremity of the black hills where it is very narrow and rapid and it's banks high and perpendicular. it takes it's rise in a broken country West of the Black hills with the waters of the yellow stone river, and a considerable distance S.W. of the point at which it passes the black hills. the country through which it passes is generally broken and the highlands possess but little timber. there is some timber in its bottom lands,
which consists of Cottonwood red Elm, with a small proportion of small Ash and box elder. The under brush is willow, red wood, (sometimes called red or swamp willow) the red burry, and Choke cherry the country is extremely broken about the mouth of this river, and as far up on both sides, as we could observe it from the tops of some elevated hills, which stand between these two rivers, about 3 miles from their junction. The soil appears fertile and deep, it consists generally of a dark rich loam intermixed with a small proportion of fine sand. this river in its course passes near the N.W. side of the turtle mountain, which is said to be no more than 4 or 5 leagues distant from it's entrance in a straight direction, a little to the S. of West. this mountain and the knife river have therefore been laid down too far S.W. the colour of the water, the bed of the river, and it's appearance in every respect, resembles the Missouri; I am therefore induced to believe that the texture of the soil of the country in which it takes it's rise, and that through which it passes, is similar to the country through which the Missouri passes after leaving the woody country, or such as we are now in. On the side of a hill not distant from our camp I found some of the dwarf cedar of which I preserved a specimen (See N° 2.) this plant spreads it's limbs along the surface of the earth, where they are sometimes covered, and always put forth a number of roots on the under side, while on the upper there are a great number of small shoots which with their leaves seldom rise higher than 6 or eight inches. they grow so close as perfectly to conceal the ca[r]th. it is an evergreen; the leaf is much more delicate than the common Cedar, and it's taste and smell the same. I have often thought that this plant would make very handsome edgings to the borders and walks of a garden; it is quite as handsome as box, and would be much more easily propagated.

The appearance of the glauber salts and Carbonated wood still continue.

Cou[r]se and distance of this day was.

N. 83° W. to the entrance of the little Missouri — 4 1/2

1 This is not a willow, but a cornel (Cornus stolonifera); its bark is used in the preparation of kinnikinnick. — Ed
a fine morning Set out verry early. the mercury stood 56 above ⁰, proceeded on to the mouth of the Little Missouri river and formed a camp in a butiful elivated plain on the lower side for the purpose of takeing Some observations to fix the Latitude & Longitude of this river. this river falls in on the L. Side and is 134 yards wide and 2 feet 6 Inches deep at the mouth, it takes its rise in the N W extremity of the black mountains, and [runs] through a broken countrey in its whole course washing the N W base of the Turtle Mountain which is Situated about 6 Leagues S W of its mouth, one of our men Baptiest who came down this river in a canoe informs me that it is not navagable, he was 45 days descending.

One of our men Shot a beaver swimming below the mouth of this river.

I walked out on the lower Side of this river and found the countrey hilley the soil composed of black mole & a small perporportion of sand containing great quantity of Small peable some limestone, black flint, & sand Stone

I killed a Hare changeing its colour some parts retaining its long white fur & other parts assuming the short grey, I saw the Magpie in pars, flocks of Grouse. the old field lark & crows, & observed the leaf of the wild chery half grown, many flowers are to be seen in the plains, remains of Mintarra & Ossinnehoin hunting camps are to be seen on each side of the two Missouris

The wind blew verry hard from the S. all the after part of the day, at 3 oClock PM. it became violent & blowey accompanied with thunder and a little rain. We examined our canoes & found Several men which had already commenced cutting our bags of corn & parched meal, the water of the little Missouri is of the same texture colour & quallity of that of the Big Missouri the after part of the day so cloudy that we lost the evening observation.

Course & Distance of the 12th

N. 80° W. 4 ½ miles to the mouth of the Little Missouri River on the S.S.
IDOLS OF THE MANDAN INDIANS
[Lewis]

Saturday, April 15th

Being disappointed in my observations of yesterday for Longitude, I was unwilling to remain at the entrance of the river another day for that purpose, and therefore determined to set out early this morning; which we did accordingly; the wind was in our favour after 9 A.M. and continued favourable until three P.M. we therefore hoisted both the sails in the White Perogue, consisting of a small square sail, and spritsail, which carried her at a pretty good gate, until about 2 in the afternoon when a sudden squall of wind struck us and turned the perogue so much on the side as to allarm Sharbano who was steering at the time; in this state of alarm he threw the perogue with her side to the wind, when the spritsail gibing was as near oversetting the perogue as it was possible to have missed. the wind however abating for an instant I ordered Drewyer to the helm and the sails to be taken in, which was instant[ly] executed and the perogue being steered before the wind was again placed in a state of security; this accident was very near costing us dearly. believing this vessell to be the most steady and safe, we had embarked on board of it our instruments, Papers, medicine and the most valuable part of the merchandize which we had still in reserve as presents for the Indians; we had also embarked on board ourselves, with three men who could not swim and the squaw with the young child, all of whom, had the perogue overset, would most probably have perished, as the waves were high, and the perogue upwards of 200 yards from the nearest shore; however we fortunately escaped and pursued our journey under the square sail, which shortly after the accident I directed to be again hoisted. our party caught three beaver last evening; and the French hunters as there was much appearance of beaver just above the entrance of the little Missouri these hunters concluded to remain some days, we therefore left them without the expectation of seeing them again; just above the entrance of the little Missouri the great Missouri is upwards of a mile in width, tho' immediately at the entrance of the former it is not more than 200 yards wide and so shallow that the canoes passed it with setting poles. at the distance of nine miles passed

[301]
the mouth of a creek on the Star's side which we called onion creek from the quantity of wild onions which grow in the plains on it's borders. Capt. Clark who was on shore informed me that this creek was 16 yards wide a mile & a half above it's entrance, discharges more water than creeks of it's size usually do in this open country, and that there was not a stick of timber of any discription to be seen on it's borders, or the level plain country through which it passes. at the distance of 10 Miles further we passed the mouth of a large creek, discharging itself in the center of a deep bend. of this creek and the neighbouring country, Capt. Clark who was on shore gave me the following discription. "This creek I took to be a small river from it's size, and the quantity of water which it discharged; I ascended it 11 ½ miles, and found it the discharge of a pond or small lake, which had the appearance of having formerly been the bed of the Missouri. several small streams discharge themselves into this lake. the country on both sides consists of beautifull level and elivated plains; ascending as they recede from the Missouri; there were a great number of Swan and gees in this lake and near it's borders I saw the remains of 43, temperary Indian lodges, which I presume were those of the Assinniboins who are now in the neighbourhood of the British establishments on the Assinniboin river." This lake and it's discharge we call goos Egg from the circumstance of Capt. Clark shooting a goose while on her nest in the top of a lofty cotton wood tree, from which we afterwards took one egg. the wild gees frequently build their nests in this manner, at least we have already found several in trees, nor have we as yet seen any on the ground, or sand bars where I had supposed from previous information that they most commonly deposited their eggs. saw some Buffaloe and Elk at a distance to-day but killed none of them. we found a number of carcasses of the Buffaloe lying along shore, which had been drowned by falling through the ice in winter and lodged on shore by the high water when the river broke up about the first of this month. we saw also many tracks of the white bear of enormous size, along the river shore and about the carcasses of the Buffaloe, on which I presume they feed. we have not
as yet seen one of these animals, tho' their tracks are so abundant and recent, the men as well as ourselves are anxious to meet with some of these bear. the Indians give a very formidable account of the strength and ferocity of this animal, which they never dare to attack but in parties of six eight or ten persons; and are even then frequently defeated with the loss of one or more of their party. the savages attack this animal with their bows and arrows and the indifferent guns with which the traders furnish them, with these they shoot with such uncertainty and at so short a distance, that (unless shot thro' head or heart wound not mortal) they frequently mis their aim & fall a sacrifice to the bear. two Metacaries were killed during the last winter in an attack on a white bear. this animal is said more frequently to attack a man on meeting with him, than to flee from him. When the Indians are about to go in quest of the white bear, previous to their departure, they paint themselves and perform all those superstitious rights commonly observed when they are about to make war upon a neighbouring nation. O[h]served more bald eagles on this part of the Missouri than we have previously seen. saw the small hawk, frequently called the sparrow hawk, which is common to most parts of the U. States. great quantities of geese are seen feeding in the praries. saw a large flock of white brant or geese with black wings pass up the river; there were a number of gray brant with them; from their flight I presume they proceed much further still to the N.W. we have never been enabled yet to shoot one of these birds, and cannot therefore determine whether the gray brant found with the white, are their brade of the last year or whether they are the same with the gray brant common to the Mississippi and lower part of the Missouri. we killed 2 antelopes to-day which we found swimming from the S. to the N. side of the river; they were very poor. We encamped this evening on the Star' shore in a beautifull plain, elevated about 30 feet above the river.
The courses and distances of this day are as follow.

N. 18. W. to a point of wood on the L. side, point on the Lar' at 1 1/2 miles

N. 10. W. to the upper point of a Low bluff on the Star' pass a creek on Star' side.

N. 45. W. to a point of Woodland on Lar' side

N. 28. W. to a point of Woodland Star' side

S. 35. W. to a point of Woodland on Star' side, passed a creek on Star' side near the commencement of this course also, two points on the Lar' side, the one at a mile, and the other 1 1/2 a mile further, also a large sand bar in the river above the entrance of the creek 4-

23 1/2

Note our encampment was one mile short of the extremity of the last course.

[Clark:] 15th of April Saturday 1805

Set out this morning at 6oClock, the Missouri above the mouth of Little Missouri widens to nearly a mile containing a number of Sand bars this width &c. of the River continues Generally as high as the Rochejhone River. Cought 3 beaver this morning, at 9 miles passed the mouth of a Creek on the S.S. on the banks of which there is an immense quantity of wild onions or garlick, I was up this Creek 1 1/2 a mile and could not see one Stick of timber of any kind on its borders, this creek is 16 yds wide 1 1/2 a mile up it and discharges more water than is common for Creeks of its Size. at about 10 miles higher we pass a creek about 30 yards wide in a deep bend to the N W. This creek I took to be a Small river from its size & the quantity of water which it discharged, I assended it 1 1/2 miles and found it the discharge of a pond or Small Lake which has appearance of having been once the head of the river. Some small streams discharge themselves into this Lake. the country on both sides is butfull elevated plains assending in Some parts to a great distance near the aforesaid Lake (what we call Goose egg L) from a circumstance of my shooting a goose on her nest on some sticks in the top of a
high cotton wood tree in which there was one egg. We saw
8 buffalo at a distance which were very wild. I saw near
the Lake the remains of 43 lodges, which has latterly been
abandoned. I suppose them to have been Ossinniboons and
now near the British establishments on the Ossinniboin River
trading. we camped on the S.S. in a beautiful Plain. I ob-
served more bald Eagles on this part of the Missouri than usual
also a small Hawk. Killed 2 Antelopes in the river to day.

Course distance & the 13th of April 1805
N. 18° W. 7 1/2 miles to a point of wood on the L.S. passed a point
on the L.S. at 1 1/2 miles
N. 10° W. 5 miles to the upper point of a low bluff on the S.S.
passed a creek on the S.S. (1)
N. 45° W. 4 miles to a point of woodland on L.S.
N. 28° W. 3 miles to a point of woodland on S.S. the river making
a Deep bend to the N.W.
S 35° W. 4 miles to a point of wood on the S.S. passed a creek (2)
23 1/2 on the S.S. near the commencement of this course,
also two points on the L.S one at a mile & the
other 1 1/2 a mile further, also a large sand bar in the
middle of the river above the mouth of the creek.

cemence numbers of Geese to be seen pared & a Gage
of brant pass one half of the gage white with black wings or
the large feathers of the 1st & 2d joint the remd: of the
com[mo]n color. a voice much like that of a goos &
finer &c.

[Lewis:] Sunday April 14th 1805.

One of the hunters saw an Otter last evening and shot at it,
but missed it. a dog came to us this morning, which we sup-
pessed to have been lost by the Indians who were recently
encamped near the lake that we passed yesterday. the min-
er appearances of salts, coal and sulphur, together with brunt
hills & pumice stone still continue, while we remained at
the entrance of the little Missouri, we saw several pieces of pumice
stone floating down that stream, a considerable quant[it]y of
which had lodged against a point of drift wood a little above its entrance. Capt. Clark walked on shore this morning, and on his return informed me that he had passed through the timbered bottoms on the N. side of the river, and had extended his walk several miles back on the hills; in the bottom lands he had met with several uninhabited Indian lodges built with the boughs of the Elm, and in the plains he met with the remains of two large encampments of a recent date, which from the appearance of some hoops of small kegs, seen near them we concluded that they must have been the camps of the Assinniboins, as no other nation who visit this part of the Missouri ever indulge themselves with spirituous liquor. of this article the Assinniboins are pationately fond, and we are informed that it, forms their principal inducement to furnish the British establishments on the Assinniboin river with the dried and pounded meat and grease which they do. they also supply those establishments with a small quantity of fur, consisting principally of the large and small wolves and the small fox skins. these they barter for small kegs of rum which they generally transport to their camps at a distance from the establishments, where they revel with their friends and relations as long as they possess the means of intoxication, their women and children are equally indulged on those occasions and are all seen drunk together. so far is a state of intoxication from being a cause of reproach among them, that with the men, it is a matter of exultation that their skill and industry as hunters has enabled them to get drunk frequently. in their customs, habits and dispositions these people very much resemble the Siouxs from whom they have descended. The principal inducement with the British fur companies, for continuing their establishments on the Assinniboin river, is the Buffaloe meat and grease they procure from the Assinniboins, and Christianes, by means of which, they are enabled to supply provision to their engages on their return from rainy Lake to the English river and the Athabaskey country where they winter; without such resource those voyagers

1 The kit fox (Vulpes velox) — En.
MS. Page, by Lewis, dated April 18, 1805.
would frequently be straitened for provision, as the country through which they pass is but scantily supplied with game, and the rapidity with which they are compelled to travel in order to reach their winter stations, would leave them but little leisure to search for food while on their voyage.

The Assinniboins have so recently left this neighbourhood, that the game is scarce and very shy; the river continues wide, and not more rapid than the Ohio in an average state of it's current. the bottoms are wide and low, the moister parts containing some timber; the upland is extremely broken, consisting of high gaulted mounds as far as the eye can reach on either side, and entirely destitute of timber. on these hills many aromatic herbs are seen; resembling in taste, smell and appearance, the sage, hysop, wormwood, southernwood, and two other herbs which are strangers to me; the one resembling the camphor in taste and smell, rising to the height of 2 or 3 feet; the other about the same size, has a long, narrow, smooth, soft leaf of an agreeable smell and flavor; of this last the A[n]teIope is very fond; they feed on it, and perfume the hair of their foreheads and necks with it by rubbing against it. the dwarf cedar and juniper is also found in great abundance on the sides of these hills. where the land is level, it is uniformly fertile consisting of a dark loam intermixed with a proportion of fine sand. it is generally covered with a short grass resembling very much the blue grass. the mineral appearances still continue; considerable quantities of bituminous water, about the colour of strong lye trickles down the sides of the hills; this water partakes of the taste of glauber salts and slightly of alumina. while the party halted to take dinner today Capt. Clark killed a buffaloe bull; it was meagre, and we therefore took the marrow bones and a small proportion of the meat only. near the place we dined, on the Lard. side, there was a large village of burrowing squirrels. 1 have remarked that these animals generally select a South Easterly exposure for their residence, tho' they are sometimes found in

1 Probably the common sage-brush (Artemisia tridentata), which Lewis is comparing to all these garden herbs which he names. The identity of the two other plants is not plain. — Ed.
the level plains. passed an Island, above which two small creeks fall in on Lar's side; the upper creek largest, which we called Sharbono's Creek, after our interpreter who encamped several weeks on it with a hunting party of Indians. this was the highest point to which any whiteman had ever ascended, except two Frenchmen (one of whom Lapage was now with us. See at Mandan) who having lost their way had straggled a few miles further, tho' to what place precisely I could not learn. I walked on shore above this creek and killed an Elk, which was so poor that it was unfit for use; I therefore left it, and joined the party at their encampment on the Star's shore a little after dark. on my arrival Capt. Clark informed me that he had seen two white bear pass over the hills shortly after I fired, and that they appeared to run nearly from the place where I shot. the lar's shore on which I walked was very broken, and the hills in many places had the appearance of having slipped down in masses of several acres of land in surface. we saw many gees feeding on the tender grass in the praries and several of their nests in the trees ; we have not in a single instance found the nest of this bird on or near the ground. we saw a number of Magpies their nests and eggs. their nests are built in trees and composed of small sticks leaves and grass, open at top, and much in the stile of the large blackbird comm to the U.'States. the egg is of a bluish brown colour, freckled with redish brown spots. one of the party killed a large hooting owl; I observed no difference between this bird and those of the same family common to the U.'States, except that this appeared to be more booted and more thickly clad with feathers.

1 Lewis and Clark here distinctly state that they have now passed beyond the highest point on the Missouri heretofore explored by white men. Chaboneau had been as far as the creek named for him (probably Indian Creek of to-day), and Lapage, another recruit from the Mandan towns, had, with one other Frenchman, gone a few miles farther; but beyond that they were entering virgin territory. This is important, for it shows that the quest for furs had not yet been pushed appreciably west of the Mandan villages by the British for companies. — O. D. Wheeler.
The courses and distances of the 14th April.

S. 45° W. to the mouth of a small creek at the upper part of a timbered bottom...

W. - to a point of Woodland on the Lar' side...

N. 85° W. to a point on the Star' opposite to a bluff...

N. 87° W. to a point on Star' opposite to a bluff on La'.

W. - to the lower point of an Island which from the circumstance of our arriving at it on Sunday we called Sunday Island. The river washes the base of the hills on both sides of this Island.

N. 70° W. to a point of woodland on the Star' Side - the Island and it's sandbar occupy 1/2 the distance of this course - pass two small creeks on the Lar' Side, the upper one the largest, called Sharbono's creek.

Miles 14

Point of Observation N. 2.

On the Star shore 1/4 of a mile above the extremity of the third course of this day observed Meridian Alt. 0° 1. 4., with Octant by the back Ob' 81° 34' 2.

Latitude deduced from this Observat'.

Point of Observation N. 3.

At our encampment of this evening on the Star' Sh. observed time and distance of 2° Western limb from Regulus, with Sextant. *West. -

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Distance</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Distance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P.M. 10° 47' 2 - 2 - 72. 10. 30'.</td>
<td>P.M. 11° 2 - 2 - 25. 25' 45'.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; 51. 15&quot; - &quot; 21. -</td>
<td>&quot; 10. 19&quot; - &quot; 30. -</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| " 53. 19 - " 21. 45" | " 12. 12 - " 31. 15"
| " 59. 2 - " 23. - | " 12. 12 - " 31. 15" |

Observed time and distance of 2° Eastern limb from a. Aquile with Sextant. *East. -

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Distance</th>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Distance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| P.M. 11° 22" 7 - 82. 16. 45" | P.M. 11° 30" 47" - 82. 14. 45"
| " 27. 7 - " 16. 15 | " 30. 34" - " 14. - |
| " 38. 23" - " 15. 30" | " 43. 2 - " 13. 15"
| " 32. 27" - " 15. 15" | " 40. 8 - " 13. 30"
| " 34. 30" - " 15. 15" | " 48. 10" - " 13. - |
a fine morning, a dog came to us this morning we suppose him to be left by the Ind' who had their camps near the Lake we passed yesterday not long sence, I observed several single Lodges built of stiks of [c]otten timber in different parts of the bottoms. in my walk of this [day] which was through the wooded bottoms and on the hills for several miles back from the river on the S.S. I saw the remains of two Indian incampmints with wide beenen tracks leading to them. those were no doubt the camps of the Ossinnaboin Indians (a Strong evidence is hoops of Small Kegs were found in the incampments) no other nation on the river above the Sioux make use of Spiritious licquer. The Ossinniboins is said to be pasionately fond of Licquer, and is the principal inducement to their putting themselves to the trouble of catching the few wolves and foxes which they furnish, and receive their [liquor] always in small Kegs. The Ossinniboins make use of the Same kind of Lodges which the Sioux and other Indians on this river make use of. Those lodges or tents are made of a number of dressed buffalow Skins sowed together with sinews & deckerated with the tales, & Porcupine quills, when open it forms a half circle with a part about 4 Inches wide projecting about 8 or 9 Inches from the center of the Streight Side for the purpose of attaching it to a pole to it the hight they wish to raise the tent, when the[\text{y}] erect this tent four poles of equal length are tied near one end, those poles are elevated and 8, 10 or 12 other poles are annexed forming a circle at the ground and lodging in the forks of the four attached poles, the tents are then raised, by attaching the projecting part to a pole and incampassing the poles with the tent by bringing the two ends together and attached with a cord, on land as high as is necessary, leaving the lower part open for about 4 feet for to pass in & out, and the top is generally left open to admit the smoke to pass. The Borders of the river has been so much hunted by those Indians who must have left it about 8 or 10 days past and I presume are now in the neighbourhood of British establishments on the Ossinniboin; the game is scarce and very wild.
The River continues wide and the current gentle not more rapid than the current of the Ohio in middle State. The bottoms are wide and low and the moist parts of them contain some wood such as cotton Elm & small ash, willow rose bushes & &c. & next to the hills Great quantity of wild Isop, [hyssop] the hills are high broken in every direction, and the mineral appearance of Salts continue to appear in a greater perportion, also Sulphur, coal & bituminous water in a smaller quantity, I have observed but five burnt hills, about the little Missouri, and I have not seen any Punney stone above that River I saw Buffalow on the L.S. crossed and during the time of dinner killed a Bull, which was poor, we made use of the best of it, I saw a village of Burrowing dogs on the L. S. passed a Island above which two small creeks falls in on the L.S. the upper of which is the largest and we call Shabonas Creek after our interpreter who incamped several weeks on this creek and is the highest point on the Missouri to which a white man has been previous to this time. Cap' Lewis walked out above this creek and killed an Elk which he found so meager that it was not fit for use, and joined the boat at Dusk at our camp on the S.S. opposit a high hill several parts of which had slipped down. on the side of those hills we saw two white bear running from the report of Cap' Lewis Shot, those animals ascended those Steep hills with surprising ease & velocity, they were too far to discover their Dusky colour & size. Saw several gees nests on trees, also the nests & eggs of the Magpies, a large grey owl killed, booted & with ears &c.

Course distance & the 14th of April
S. 45°. W. 2¹/₂ miles to the mouth of a small creek at the upper part of a wood bottom in a bend to L.S.
West 3¹/₂ miles to a point of wood land on the L.S.
N. 85°. W. 2 miles to a point on the S. S. oppo point a bluff
N. 85° W 1¹/₄ m's to a point on S. S. pass a bluff on the L. S.
West 1 mile to a Island oppo the upper point the river washes the base of the hill on both sides, which we call Sunday Isl. &
N. 70° W. 3¹/₂ miles to a p't of wood land on the S.S. the Island & its sand bars occupy half the distance. passed 2 small creeks on the L.S. the upper the largest.
LEWIS AND CLARK JOURNALS [April 15

[Lewis]: Monday April 15th, 1805.

Set out at an early hour this morning. I walked on shore, and Capt. Clark continued with the party it being an invariable rule with us not to be both absent from our vessels at the same time. I passed through the bottoms of the river on the Star! side. they were partially covered with timber, were extensive, level and beatifull. in my walk which was about 6 miles I passed a small rivulet of clear water making down from the hills, which on tasting, I discovered to be in a small degree brackish. it possessed less of the glauber salt, or alumn, than those little streams from the hills usually do. in a little pond of water frumed by this rivulet where it entered the bottom, I heard the frogs crying for the first time this season; their note was the same with that of the small frogs which are common to the lagoons and swamp[s] of the U. States. I saw great quantities of gees feeding in the bottoms, of which I shot one. saw some deer and Elk, but they were remarkably shy. I also met with great numbers of Grouse or prarie hens as they are called by the English traders of the N.W. these birds appeared to be mating; the note of the male, is kuck, kuck, kuck, coo, coo, coo. the first part of the note both male and female use when flying. the male also dubbs (drums with his wings) something like the pheasant, but by no means as loud. After breakfast Capt. Clark walked on the St! shore, and on his return in the evening gave me the following account of his ramble. "I assended to the high country, about 9 miles distant from the Missouri. the country consists of beatifull, level and fertile plains, destitute of timber. I saw many little dranes, which took their rise in the river hills, from whence as far as I could see they run to the N. E." these streams we suppose to be the waters of Mous river a branch of the Assinniboin which the Indians informed us approaches the Missouri very nearly, about this point. "I passed," continued he, a Creek about 20 yards wide, which falls into the Missouri; the bottoms of this creek are wide level and extremely fertile, but almost entirely destitute of timber. the water of this creek as well as all those creeks and rivulets which we have passed since we left Fort Mandan was so strongly impregnated with

[312]
salts and other mineral substances that I was incapable of drinking it. I saw the remains of several camps of the Assiniboins; near one of which in a small ravine, there was a park which they had formed of timber and brush, for the purpose of taking the cabrie\(^1\) or Antelope. It was constructed in the following manner: a strong pound was first made of timbers, on one side of which there was a small appurtenant, sufficiently large to admit an Antelope; from each side of this appurtenant, a curtain was extended to a considerable distance, widening as they receded from the pound.\(^2\) We passed a rock this evening standing in the middle of the river, and the bed of the river was formed principally of gravel. We encamped this evening on a sand point on Lar\(^1\) side. A little above our encampment the river was confined to a channel of 80 yards in width.

Courses and distances of the 15\(^{th}\) April.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Courses</th>
<th>Distances</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. to a point of wood on Lar(^1) side, opposite to a high hill</td>
<td>2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 18. W. to a point of wood on the Star(^1) side opposite to the lower point of an Island in a Lar(^1) bend of the river</td>
<td>5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 20. E. to a bluff point on Star(^1) passed the upper part of the Island at 2 Miles</td>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 32. E. to a point of woodland on Lar(^1) side.</td>
<td>2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 30. W. on the Lar(^1) point</td>
<td>1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 15. W. on the Lar(^1) point</td>
<td>4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 12. W. to the lower part of a bluff on the Star(^1) side, passing a creek on Star(^1)</td>
<td>1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 52. W. to a high bluff on the Star(^1) side</td>
<td>2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 75. W. to a point of woodland on the Star(^1) side</td>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 16. W. to a point of Woodland on Lar(^1) side</td>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Point of Observation No. 4.

Apr. 15\(^{th}\) 1805. On the Star\(^1\) shore, one mile above the extremity of the 2\(^{nd}\) course of this day, I took two altitudes of the sun with the Sextant and artificial horizon.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Altitudes...</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A. M. 9. 9. 33</td>
<td>69. 20. 45.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. 3. 28.</td>
<td>84. 24. 15.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chronometer to fast at the time of observation on mean time.

---

1. A common name for the American antelope; corrupted from Spanish cabra, "goat." — Ed.
LEWIS AND CLARK JOURNALS  April 15

[Clark:] 15th of April Monday 1805

Set out at an early hour, Cap' Lewis walked on shore and
Killed a goose, passed a Island in a bend to the L.S. the
wind hard from the S.E. after breakfast I walked on Shore
and assended to the high Countrey on the S. S. and off from
the Missouri about three miles the countrey is but small open
fertile plain the dreams [drains] take there rise near the clifts
of the river and run from the river in a N.E decretion as far as
I could see, this is the part of the River which Mouse river
the waters of Lake Winnipeg approaches within a few miles
of Missouri, and I believe those dreams lead into that river. we
passed a creek about 20 yd wide on the S. S. the bottoms of
this creek is extensive & fertile, the water of this as also, all
the Streams which head a few miles in the hills discharge water
which is black & unfit for use (and can safely say that I have
not seen one drop of water fit for use above fort Mandan except
Knife and the little Missouri Rivers and the Missouri, the
other Streams being so much impregnated with mineral as to
be very disagreeable in its present state. I saw the remains
of Several camps of ossinniboins, near one of those camps &
at no great distance from the mouth of the aforesaid creek, in
a hollow, I saw a large Strong pen made for the purpose of
catching the antelope, with wings projecting from it widining
from the pen.

Saw several gangs of Buffalow and som elk at a distance, a
black bear seen from the Perogues to day. passed a rock in
the Middle of the river, some smaller rocks from that to the
L. Shore, the dog that came to us yesterday morning con-
tinues to follow us, we camped on a sand point to the L.S.

Course distance & the 15th of April
North  2  m. to a p' of wood on the L. S 1/4 a high hill on the S! S 1/4
N. 18° W. 5 miles to a point of wood on the S! S! op 1/4 the lower
point of an Island L. Bend
N. 20° E. 3 1/4 miles to a Bluff point on the S! S! passed the upper
part of the Island at 2 miles
N. 30° E. 21 1/2 miles to a point of woodland on the L. Side
N. 10° W  1/2 a mile on the L! point

[314]
N. 15° W. 1/4 of a mile on the L. p' here the waters of Mouse river is near

N. 12° W. 1 1/2 miles to the lower part of a Bluff on the S' Side passing a creek on the S. Side. Goat pen creek

N. 51 W. 2 miles to a high Bluff on the S' Side

N. 75 W. 3 miles to a p' of woodland on the S. Side

N. 10° W. 3 miles to a point of woods on the L. S.

---

[LEWIS:] Tuesday April 16, 1805

Set out very early this morning. Capt. Clark walked on shore this morning, and killed an Antelope, rejoined us at 1/2 after eight A.M. he informed me that he had seen many Buffaloe Elk and deer in his absence, and that he had met with a great number of old hornets nests in the woody bottoms through which he had passed. the hills of the river still continue extremely broken for a few miles back, when it becomes a fine level country of open fertile lands. immediately on the river there are many fine level extensive and extremely fertile high plains and meadows. I think the quantity of timbered land on the river is increasing. the mineral appearances still continue. I met with several stones today that had the appearance of wood first carbonated and then petrified by the water of the river, which I have discovered has that effect on many vegetable substances when exposed to it's influence for a length of time. I believe it to be the stratas of coal seen in those hills which causes the fire and birnt appearances frequently met with in this quarter. where those birnt appearances are to be seen in the face of the river bluffs, the coal is seldom seen, and when you meet with it in the neighbourhood of the stratas of birnt earth, the coal appears to be precisely at the same height, and is nearly of the same thickness, together with the sand and a sulphurous substance which usually accompanies it. there was a remarkable large beaver caught by one of the party last night. these animals are now very abundant. I have met with several trees which have been felled by them 20 Inches in diameter. bark is their only food: and they appear to prefer that of the Cotton wood and willow.
as we have never met with any other species of timber on the Missouri which had the appearance of being cut by them. we passed three small creeks on the Star's side. they take their rise in the river hills at no great distance. we saw a great number of geese today, both in the plains and on the river. I have observed but few ducks, those we have met with are the Mallard and blue winged Teal.

Courses and distances of 16th April,

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Distance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S. 80. W. to a point of woodland on the Star's side</td>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 36. W. to a point of woodland on the Lar's side</td>
<td>2 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 60. W. to a point of wood on the Star's side, opposite to a bluff which commences 1 mile below on the Lar's side</td>
<td>3 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 25. W. to a point of woodland on the Lar's side</td>
<td>2 3/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 70. W. to a point of woodland on the Lar's side, passing a point of wood and large sand bar on the Star's side</td>
<td>6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 65. W. along the Lar's point of woods to our encampment of this evening</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miles</td>
<td>18.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note. The distances we are obliged to pass around the sand bars is much greater than those here stated from point to point.

[Clark:] 16th of April Tuesday 1805

Wind hard from the S. E. I walked on shore and Killed an antelope which was very meagre. Saw Great numbers of Elk & some buffalo & Deer, a very large Beaver caught this morning. Some very handsome high planes & extensive bottoms. The mineral appearances of coal & Salt together with some appearance of Burnt hills[1]s continue. A number of old hornets' nests seen in every bottom more particularly in the one opposite to the place we camped this night. the wooded bottoms are more extensive to day than Common. passed three small creeks on the S. S. to day which take their rise in the hills at no great distance. Great numbers of Gees in the river & in the Plains feeding on the Grass.
S. 80° W. 3 miles to a point of wood land on the S' Side.
N. 36° W. 2 1/2 miles to a point of wood land on the L. Side.
S. 66° W. 3 1/2 miles to a point of wood on the S' Side opposite a bluff which commences 1 mile below on the Larboard side.
N. 25° W. 2 1/2 miles to a point of wood land on the L. Side.
S. 70° W. 6 miles to a point of wood land on the L. Side, passing a point of wood land on the S' Side, passing a large Sand bar S'.
S. 65° W. ½ a mile along the L. Point of wood.

[Lewis:]

Wednesday April 1st 1805.

A delightfull morning, set out at an erly hour, the country through which we passed to day was much the same as that discerbed of yesterday; there was more appearance of burnt hills, furnishing large quanitie of lava and pumice stone; of the latter some pieces were seen floating down the river. Capt. Clark walked on shore this morning on the Star' side, and did not join us untill half after six in the evening. he informed me that he had seen the remains of the Assinniboin encampments in every point of woodland through which he had passed. we saw immense quantities of game in every direction around us as we passed up the river; consisting of herds of Buffaloe, Elk, and Antelopes with some deer and woolves. tho' we continue to see many tracks of the bear we have seen but very few of them, and those are at a great distance generally running from us; I therfore presume that they are extrimly wary and shy; the Indian account of them dote not corrspond with our experience so far. one black bear passed near the perogues on the 16th and was seen by myself and the party but he so quickly disappeared that we did not shoot at him. at the place we halted to dine on the Lar' side we met with a herd of buffaloe of which I killed the fatest as I conceived among them, however on examining it I found it so poor that I thought it unfit for use and only took the tongue; the party killed another which was still more lean. just before we encamped this evening we saw
some tracks of Indians who had passed about 24 hours; they
left four rafts of tim[ber] on the Star\(^1\) side, on which they had
passed. we supposed them to have been a party of the
Assinniboins who had been to war against the rocky Moun-
tain Indians, and then on their return. Capt. Clark saw a
curlou to-day. there were three beaver taken this morning
by the party. the men prefer the flesh of this animal, to that
of any other which we have, or are able to procure at this
moment. I eat very heartily of the beaver myself, and think
it excellent; particularly the tail, and liver. we had a fair
wind today which enabled us to sail the greater part of the
distance we have traveled, encamped on the Lar\(^3\) shore the
extremity of the last course.

Courses and distances of the 17\(^{th}\)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direction</th>
<th>Distance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S. 70. W. to a point of willows on the Star(^1) side</td>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 75. W. along the Star(^2) point, opposite to a bluff</td>
<td>(\frac{1}{2}).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 75. W. to a wood in a bend on the Star(^2) side</td>
<td>3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 50. W. to a point of woodland Star(^2) side</td>
<td>3.12.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 60. W. to a point of woodland on Star(^1) side opposite to a</td>
<td>(\frac{3}{4}).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bluff on Lard, just above which, a creek falls in on</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Lar(^3) about 10 yards wide.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 80. W. to a willow point on the Lar(^1) side.</td>
<td>3.14.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 85. W. to a point of woodland Lar(^3) opposite to a bluff on</td>
<td>3.34.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Star(^1) side</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West. Along the Lar(^1) point, opposite to a high bluff above</td>
<td>1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>which a small run falls in</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 40. W. along the same point of woodland Lar(^3) side.</td>
<td>1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 30. W. along the Lar(^1) side to a willow point</td>
<td>1/4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 14. W. to the upper part of the high timber on the Star(^1) side</td>
<td>4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 28. W. to a point of woodland on the Lar(^4) side where we</td>
<td>2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encamped for the night</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miles</td>
<td>.26</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[Clark:] 17\(^{th}\) of April Wednesday 1805

a fine morning wind from the S E. Gen\(^{y}\) to day handsom
high extensive rich Plains on each side, the mineral appear-
ances continue with greater appearances of coal, much greater
appearance of the hills having been burnt, more Pumice
Stone & Lava washed down to the bottoms and some Pumice
Stone floating in the river, I walked on the S.S. saw great numbers of Buffalow feeding in the Plains at a distance. Cap' Lewis killed 2 Buffalow bulls which was near the water at the time of dicing, they were so pore as to be unfit for use. I saw Several Small parties of antelopes large herds of Elk, some white wolves, and in a pond (formed on the S.S. by the Missouri river changing its head) I seen Swan, Gees, & different kinds of Ducks in great numbers also a Beaver house. Passed a small creek on the S.S. & several runs of water on each side, Saw the remains of Indian camps in every point of timbered land on the S.S. in the evening a thunder gust passed from the S. W. without rain, about sunset saw some fresh Indians track and four rafts on the shore S.S. Those I presume were Ossimmiboins who had been on a war party against the Rocky Mountain Indians. Saw a curlow, some very large beaver taken this morning, those animals are made use of as food and preferred by the party to any other at this season.

Course distance \\
& 1st of April 1805
S. 70° W. 3      miles to a point of willows on the S.S.
S. 75° W. 4      miles on the S. Side opposit a Bluff
N. 75° W. 3      miles to a wood in a bend to the S. Side
N. 75° W. 4      miles to a point of wood land S. Side
S. 65° W. 3      of a mile to a p' of wood land on the S. Side opposit to
                  a Bluff on the L. Side just above which a creek
                  falls in on the Lakr about 12 yd wide.
N. 85° W. 3      miles to a willow point on the L. S. a Lake & creek
                  Starboard Strand lake
S. 85° W. 3      miles to a L. p' of wood land opposit to a bluff on
                  the Starboard Side.
West  1     mile along the L. p' of wood land, a high bluff on the
                  S.S. above which a run falls in burnt hills
S. 45° W. 1     mile along the same point of wood land Lar  S.
S. 35° W. 1     of a mile on the La' Side of a willow point.
S. 45° W. 4     miles to the upper part of a high timber on the Star-
                  board Side.
S. 28° W. 2     miles to a point of wood land on the L. Side where we
                  m't 26 camped for the night.

Note The distance we are obliged to go round sand bars & is much
greater than those called for in the courses from point to point &
A fine morning, set out at an early hour. one Beaver caught this morning by two traps, having a foot in each; the traps belonged to different individuals, between whom, a contest ensued, which would have terminated, most probably, in a serious rencontre had not our timely arrival at the place prevented it. after breakfast this morning, Capt. Clark walked on Sta' shore. while the party were assending by means of their toe lines, I walked with them on the bank; found a species of pea bearing a yellow flower, and now in blume; it seldom rises more than 6 inches high, the leaf & stalk resembles that of the common gardin pea, the root is perennial. (see specimen of vegetibles N° 3.) I also saw several parsels of buffaloe's hair hanging on the rose bushes, which had been bleached by exposure to the weather and became perfectly white. it [had] every appearance of the wool of the sheep, tho' much finer and more silkey and soft. I am confident that an excellent cloth may be made of the wool of the Buffaloe. the Buffaloe I killed yesterday had cast his long hare, and the poil which remained was very thick, fine, and about 2 inches in length. I think this anamal would have furnished about five pounds of wool. we were detained to-day from one to five P. M. in consequence of the wind which blew so violently from N. that it was with difficulty we could keep the canoes from filling with water altho' they were along shore; I had them secured by placing the perogues on the out side of them in such manner as to break the waves off them. at 5 we proceed, and shortly after met with Capt. Clark, who had killed an Elk and a deer and was wating our arrival. we took the meat on board and continued our march untill nearly dark when we came too on the Star side under a boald well-timbered bank which sheltered us from the wind.

1 When Joliet first encountered the buffalo, he observed the possibility of using its wool — "with the wool of these oxen he could make cloth, much finer than most of that which we bring from France." Catlin says that the Illinois made from this hair various articles, as leggings, girdles, and pouches. See *Jes. Relations*, livii, p. 107; livi, p. 251. Catlin recommends (*N. Amer. Inds.*, i, p. 263) the utilization of the buffalo's hair for woollen manufactures. — Ed.
which had abated but not yet ceased. Here we encamped, it being the extremity of the last course of this day.

Courses and distances of the 18th April.

South to a sand point on the Star\textsuperscript{1} side 3.
N. 75° W. to a point of Woodland on Lar\textsuperscript{1} side 2. 1/2
N. 85° W. along the Lar\textsuperscript{1} point 1/2
S. 25° E. to a sand point Star\textsuperscript{1} side 2.
S. 65° W. to a willow point Star\textsuperscript{1} side 1.
S. 65° W. along the Star\textsuperscript{1} shore to a point of timbered land, opposite to a bluff on Lar\textsuperscript{1} 1/2
N. 25° W. to a copse of wood on star\textsuperscript{1} side, in a bend 2.
S. 50° W. to a point of timbered land on Star\textsuperscript{1} side where we encamped for the night 1 1/2

Miles 13

Point of Observation N° 5.

On the Star\textsuperscript{1} shore at the extremity of the fifth course of this day

Observed Meridian Alt\textsuperscript{1} of O\textsuperscript{0} L. L. with Octant by
the back Observation 79° 12' 00".

Latitude deduced from this observat:

[Clark:] 18\textsuperscript{th} of April Thursday 1805

Set out at an early hour one Beaver & a Musrat caught this morning, the beaver caught in two traps, which like to have brought about a misunderstanding between two of the party &c. after breakfast I assended a hill and observed that the river made a great bend to the South, I concluded to walk thro' the point about 2 miles and take Shabono, with me, he had taken a dose of Salts &c. his squar followed on with her child, when I struck the next bend of the [river] could see nothing of the Party, left this man & his wife & child on the river bank and went out to hunt, killed a young Buck Elk, & a Deer, the Elk was tolerable meat, the Deer verry pore, butchered the meat and continued untill near Sunset before Cap' Lewis and the party came up, they were detained by the wind, which rose soon after I left the boat from the N W. & blew verry hard untill verry late in the evening. We camped
on the S.S. in an excellent harbor. Soon after we came too, two men went up the river to set their beaver traps; they met with a bear and being without their arms thought prudent to return. The wild cherries are in bloom. Great appearance of Burnt hills; Pumice Stone the coal & salt appearance continues, the water in the small runs much better than below. Saw several old Indian camps, the game, such as Buffalo, Elk, antelopes & Deer very plentiful.

Course distance &C. 18th of April

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direction</th>
<th>Distance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>South</td>
<td>3 miles to a point on the St Side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 75° W.</td>
<td>21 1/2 miles to a wood point on the L Side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 85° W.</td>
<td>1 1/2 mile along the La Side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 25° E.</td>
<td>2 miles to a sand point on the S Side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 65° W.</td>
<td>1 mile to a point of Willows on the S Side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 65° W.</td>
<td>1 1/2 mile along the S point to a point of timbered land</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 25° W.</td>
<td>2 miles to a Copse of woods on the S Side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 50° W.</td>
<td>11 1/2 miles to the upper part of a wood on the Sta Side</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**[Lewis:]**

Friday April 19th, 1805.

The wind blew so hard this morning from N.W. that we dared not to venture our canoes on the river. Observed considerable quantities of dwarf juniper on the hill sides (specimen No. 4) it seldom rises higher than 3 feet. The wind detained us through the course of this day, tho' we were fortunate in having placed ourselves in a safe harbour. The party killed one Elk and a beaver today. The beaver of this part of the Missouri are larger, fatter, more abundant and better clad with fur than those of any other part of the country that I have yet seen; I have remarked also that their fur is much darker.

---

**[Clark:]**

19th of April Friday 1805

A blustering windey day the wind so hard from the N.W. that we were fearfull of ventering our Canoes in the river, lay by all day on the S. Side in a good harber, the Praries appear

---

1 This should be No. 104. See "Scientific Data: Botany," in vol. vi, part. — Ed.
to Green, the cotton trees begin to leave. Saw some plumb bushes in full bloom, those were the plumb bushes which I have seen for some time. Killed an Elk and a Beaver today. The beaver of this river is much larger than usual. Great deal of Sign of the large Bear.

[Lewis:] Saturday April 20th 1805.

The wind continued to blow tolerably hard this morning but by no means as violently as it did yesterday; we determined to set out and accordingly departed a little before seven. I walked on shore on the N. side of the river, and Capt Clark proceeded with the party, the river bottoms through which I passed about seven miles were fertile and well covered with Cottonwood some Boxalder, ash and red Elm. the under brush, willow, rose bushes Honeysuckles, red willow, goosbury, currant and servicebury &c in the open grounds along the foot of the river hills immense quantities of the hisop. in the course of my walk I killed two deer, wounded an Elk and a deer; saw the remains of some Indian hunting camps, near which stood a small scaffold of about 7 feet high on which were deposited two dog slays with their harnis. underneath this scaffold a human body was lying, well rolled in several dressed buffaloe skins and near it a bag of the same materials containing sundry articles belonging to the deceased; consisting of a pure of mockersons, some red and blue earth, beaver's nails, instruments for dressing the Buffalo skin, some dried roots, several platts of the sweet grass, and a small quantity of Mandan tobacco. I presume that the body, as well as the bag containing these articles, had formerly been placed on the scaffold as is the custom of these people, but had fallen down by accident. near the scaffold I saw the carcase of a large dog.

1 In the MS. occurs here a red-ink interlineation (cancelled, however, by another pen), "copy this for Dr. Barton." As previously explained, in Biddle's text most of the natural history notes are omitted, because he had intended that this material should be worked up by Dr. Benjamin Smith Barton. The latter failed to do this; and the often elaborate observations of Lewis and Clark on the fauna, flora, and silva of the Great West have therefore hitherto practically lost to the scientific world. — Ed.
not yet decayed, which I supposed had been killed at the time the human body was left on the scaffold; this was no doubt the reward, which the poor doog had met with for performing the [blank space in MS.] friendly office to his mistres of transporting her corps to the place of deposit. it is customary with the Assinniboins, Mandans, Minetares &c who scaffold their dead, to sacrifice the favorite horses and doggs of their diseased relations, with a view of their being servicable to them in the land of spirits. I have never heard of any instances of human sacrifices on those occasions among them.

The wind blew so hard that I concluded it was impossible for the perogues and canoes to proceed and therefore returned and joined them about three in the evening. Capt. Clark informed me that soon after setting out, a part of the bank of the river fell in near one of the canoes and had very nearly filled her with water. that the wind became so hard and the waves so high that it was with infinite risk he had been able to get as far as his present station. the white perogue and several of the canoes had shiped water several times but happily our stores were but little injured; those which were wet we put out to dry and determined to remain untility the next morning. we sent out four hunters who soon added 3 Elk 4 gees and 2 deer to our stock of provisions. the party caught six beaver today which were large and in fine order. the Buffaloe, Elk and deer are poor at this season, and of cours are not very palitable, however our good health and apetites make up every necessary deficiency, and we eat very heartily of them.

encamped on Star' side; under a high well timbered bank.

Courses and Distances of this day.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>South</th>
<th>to the upper part of a timbered bottom at a bluff on the Lar' side</th>
<th>Miles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>West</td>
<td>to a point of high timber on the Star' side passing over a large sand point on St' side</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 45</td>
<td>W. to a large tree in a bend on star' side opposite a large sand point</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 45</td>
<td>W. to a point of low willows on St' side</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Miles | 6 1/2 |

[324]
Wind a head from the N W. we set out at 7 oClock proceeded on, soon after we set out a Bank fell in near one of the canoes which like to have filled her with water, the wind became hard and waves so rough that we proceeded with our little canoes with much risque, our situation was such after setting out that we were obliged to pass round the 1st Point or lay exposed to the blustering winds & waves, in passing round the Point several canoes took in water as also our large Perogue but without injuring our stores &c much I proceeded on to the upper part of the 1st bend and came too at a butifull Glade on the S.S. about 1 mile below Cap' Lewis who had walked thro' the point, left his Coat & a Deer on the bank which we took on board, a short distance below our Camp I saw some rafts on the S. S. near which, an Indian woman was sachteled in the Indian form of Deposing their Dead and fallen down She was or had been raised about 6 feet, inclosed in Several robes tightly laced around her, with her dog Slays, her bag of Different coloured earths paint small bones of animals beaver males and Several other little trinkets, also a blue jay, her dog was killed and lay near her. Cap' Lewis joined me soon after I landed & informed me he had walked several miles higher, & in his walk killed 2 Deer & wounded an Elk & a Deer, our party shot in the river four beaver & caught two, which were verry fat and much admired by the men, after we landed they killed 3 Elk 4 Gees & 2 Deer we had some of our Provisions & which got a little wet aired, the wind continued so hard that we were compelled to delay all day. Saw several buffalow lodged in the drift wood which had been drouned in the winter in passing the river; saw the remains of 2 which had lodged on the side of the bank & eat by the bears.
Set out at an early hour this morning. Capt. Clark walked on shore; the wind tho' a head was not violent. The country through which we passed is very similar in every respect to that through which we have passed for several days. We saw immense herds of buffaloe, Elk, deer & Antelopes. Capt. Clark killed a buffaloe and 4 deer in the course of his walk today; and the party with me killed 3 deer, 2 beaver, and 4 buffaloe calves. The latter we found very delicious. I think it equal to any veal I ever tasted. The Elk now begin to shed their horns. Passed one large and two small creeks on the Lar^1 side, tho' neither of them discharge any water at present. The wind blew so hard this evening that we were obliged to halt several hours. We reached the place of incampment after dark, which was on the Lar^1 side a little above White earth river which discharges itself on the Sta^2 side. Immediately at the mouth of this river it is not more than 10 yards wide being choked up by the mud of the Missouri; tho' after leaving the bottom lands of this river, or even sooner, it becomes a broad stream of sixty yards wide and is deep and navigable. The course of this river as far as I could see from the top of Cut bluff, was due North. It passes through a beatifull level and
fertile valley about five miles in width. I think I saw about 25 miles up this river, and did not discover one tree or bush of any description on it's borders. the valley was covered with Elk and Buffaloe. saw a great number of Geese today as usual, also some Swan and Ducks.

Courses and Distances of this day.

- S. 18. E. to a sand point S't opposite to a bluff Ltr 1
- N. 75. W. to a point of high timber on S't opposite a bluff. 1
- N. 40. W. to a willow point on Ltr opposite to a bluff. 3
- N. 60. W. to a point of woodland on Star't side, opposite to a bluff, just below which on the Lr side a creek falls in. 4
- N. 25. E. to a point of woodland on Ltr opposite to a high bluff. 2
- N. 15. W. to the upper part of a bluff Star't and in a Star't bend. 2
- S. 50. W. to the upper point of the timbered bottom on Lr side below a high bluff point which we called Cut bluff, at ¼ mile Pass White Earth river on Star'. 2

[Clark:] 21st April Sunday 1805.

Set out early the wind gentle & from the N.W. the river being very crooked, I concluded to walk through the point, the country on either side is very similar to that we have passed. Saw an immense number of Elk & Buffalow, also Deer Antelopes Geese Ducks & a few Swan, the Buffalow is about Calving. I killed a Buffalow & 4 Deer in my walk to day, the party killed 2 deer 2 beaver & 4 Buffalow Calves, which was very good veele. I saw old camps of Indians on the L. Side, we passed 1 large & 2 small creeks on the L. Side neither of them discharge any water into the river, in the evening the wind became very hard a head, we made camp at a late hour which was on the L. Side a little above the mouth of White Earth River which falls in on the Star'd Side and is 60 yds. wide, several mi' up.
[Lewis:]  

Surely, the distance &c. 21'st. of April

S 18° E 1 1/2 ml. to a sand p' S. S. op's! a Bluff on the L. S.
N 75° W 12 to a p' of high timber on the S.S' op's! a Bluff
N 40° W 3 1/2 to a willow p' L. S' op's! a Bluff on the S.S'
N 60° W 4 1/2 to a p' of wood land on the S.S' op's! a bluff just
below which a creek falls in on the L.S.
N 25° E 2 to a p' of wood land on the L. S' oppos'd to a high bluff
on the Star'd Side
N 10° W 2 to the upper part of a low bluff on the S.S' op's! to a
p' of timber on the L. Side
N 50° W 2 1/2 miles to the upper part of a timber at a high short
miles 16 1/2 bluff on the Lar'd Side, passed white earth river at 1/2
mile on the S' Side

[Mon. April 22nd. 1805.]

Set out at an early hour this morning; proceeded pretty
well untill breakfa[s]t, when the wind became so hard a head
that we proceeded with difficulty even with the assistance of
our toe lines. the party halted and Cp'l Clark and myself
walked to the white earth river which approaches the Missouri
very near at this place, being about 4 miles above it's entrance.
we found that it contained more water than streams of it's size
generally do at this season. the water is much clearer than
that of the Missouri. the banks of the river are steep and
not more than ten or twelve feet high; the bed seems to be
composed of mud altogether. the salts which have been
before mentioned as common on the Missouri, appears in
great quantities along the banks of this river, which are in
many places so thickly covered with it that they appear per-
fectly white. perhaps it has been from this white appearance
of it's banks that the river has derived it's name. this river
is said to be navigable nearly to it's source, which is at no
great distance from the Saskashawan, and I think from it's size
the direction which it seems to take, and the latitude of
it's mouth, that there is very good ground to believe that it

1328]
extends as far North as latitude 50°; this stream passes through an open country generally. The broken hills of the Missouri about this place exhibit large irregular and broken masses of rocks and stones; some of which tho' 200 feet above the level of the water seem at some former period to have felt its influence, for they appear smooth as if worn by the agitation of the water. This collection consists of white & grey gannite, a brittle black rock, flint, limestone, freestone, some small specimens of an excellent pebble and occasionally broken stratas of a stone which appears to be petrefyed wood; it is of a black colour, and makes excellent whetstones. Coal or carbonated wood pumice stone lava and other mineral appearances still continue. The coal appears to be of better quality; I exposed a specimen of it to the fire and found that it burnt tolerably well, it afforded but little flame or smoke, but produced a hot and lasting fire. I ascended to the top of the cutt bluff this morning, from whence I had a most delightfull view of the country, the whole of which except the valley formed by the Missouri is void of timber or underbrush, exposing to the first glance of the spectator immense herds of Buffalo, Elk, deer, & Antelopes feeding in one common and boundless pasture. We saw a number of beaver feeding on the bark of the trees along the verge of the river, several of which we shot, found them large and fat. Walking on shore this evening I met with a buffalo calf which attached itself to me and continued to follow close at my heels until I embarked and left it. It appeared allarmed at my dog which was probably the cause of it's so readily attaching itself to me. Capt Clark informed me that he saw a large drove of buffalo pursued by wolves today, that they at length caught a calf which was unable to keep up with the herd. The cows only defend their young so long as they are able to keep up with the herd, and seldom return any distance in and of them.

[329]
Courses and distances of 22nd of April, 1805.

N. 65° W. to a point of woodland on the Lar' side. 2.5
W. along the woodland on Lar' shore 1
S. 70° W. to the lower point of a bluff in a bend on star' side 1
S. 20° W. to the upper part of the star' bluff 2
S. 60° E. to a point of woods in a bend on Star' 1
S. 30° E. to a willow point on the Star' side 2
N. 05° E. to an object in a bend on Lar' where we encamped for the evening 1 ½

Miles .11

Point of Observation No. 6. — April 22nd 1805.

On the Lar' shore one mile above the cut bluff

A.M. 10. 44. 3 — 84. 20. 45 A.M. 11. 1. 54. — 84. 15. —
A. 49. 28. — 19. 45. A. 7. 3. — 12. 45
A. 50. 24. — 19. 30 A. 8. 3. — 12. 45
A. 51. 27. — 19. 30 A. 9. 4. — 12. 37 ½
A. 52. 35. — 19. — A. 10. 20. — 12. 30

Observed equal altitudes of the ☉ with Sextant

A. 23. 38 — A. 15. 31.
A. 25. 29. — A. 17. 20.

Altitude by Sextant at the time of observation 37° 52' 45"

[Clark:]

a very cold morning Some frost, we set out at an early hour and proceeded on very well until breakfast at which time the wind began to blow very hard ahead, and continued
hard all day we proceeded on with much difficulty with the assistance of the toe Ropes. Cap' Lewis & my self walked to the River which is near the Missouri four miles above its mouth, this river is 60 yards wide and contains a greater perportion of water at this time than is common for Rivers of its size. it appears navigable as far as any of the party was, and I am told to near its source in morasses in the open Plains, it passes (as far as we can see which is 6 or 7 Leagues) thro' a buttfull extensive valley, rich & fertile and at this time covered with Buffalow, Elk & antelopes, which may be Seen also in any other direction in this quarter. this river must take its rise at no great distance East of the Saskashawan, and no doubt as far N. as Lat' 50.

Some of the high plains on the broken rivers [banks] of the river contains great quantity of Pebble Stones of various sizes, The Stratum of coal is much richer than below, the appearances of Mineral & burnt hills still continue, the river rising a little, Saw an emence number of beaver feeding on the waters edge & swimming killed several, Cap' Lewis ascended a hill from the top of which he had a most enchanting prospect of the Countrey around & the meanderings of the two rivers, which is remarkable crooked. a buffalow calf which was on the shore alone followed Cap Lewis some distance, I observed a large drove of buffalow prosted by wolves caught one of their calves in my view, those animals defend their young as long as they can keep up with the drove

Course & Distance 22.4 of April

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Miles</th>
<th>Course &amp; Distance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. 60° W. 2 1/2</td>
<td>to a point of wood land on the L. S. Side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West 1</td>
<td>along the wood on the L. S. point</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 70° W. 1</td>
<td>to the lower part of a bluff in a bend to the Starboard Side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 25° W. 2</td>
<td>to the upper part of the Said bluff on the Starboard Side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 65° E. 1</td>
<td>to a wood in a bend to the S. E. Side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 30° E. 2</td>
<td>to a willow point on the S. E. Side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 65° E. 1 1/2</td>
<td>to an object in a bend to the L. S. and camped</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[331]
[Lewis:]

Tuesday April 23:

Set out at an early hour this morning about nine A.M. the wind arose, and shortly after became so violent that we were unable to proceed, in short it was with much difficulty and some risk that I was enabled to get the canoes and per-ogues into a place of tolerable safety, there being no timber on either side of the river at this place. some of the canoes shiped water, and wet several parsel of their lading, which I directed to be opened and aired. we remained untill five in the evening when the wind abating in some measure, we reloaded, and proceeded. shortly after we were joined by Capt. Clark who had walked on shore this morning, and passing through the bottom lands had fallen on the river some miles above, and concluding that the wind had detained us, came down the river in surch of us. he had killed three black-taled, or mule deer, and a buffaloe Calf, in the course of his ramble. these hard winds, being so frequently repeated, become a serious source of detention to us. incamped on the Star4 side.

Courses and distances of the 23rd April.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Miles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S. 25. E. to a point of timbered land on Star1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 78. W. to a ceps of woods, under a hill on Star4 in a bend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 14. E. to a point of high timber in a Lar4 bend passing the extremity of a little bay S4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 25. W. to a point of woodland on the Lar4 side.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[Clark:]

23d of April 1805

A cold morning at about 9 oClock the wind as usual rose from the N W and continued to blow very hard untill late in the evening. I walked on Shore after breakfast in my walk on the S Side passed through extensive bottoms of timber interspersed with gladles & low open plains. I killed 3 mule or black tail Deer, which was in tolerable order. Saw Several others. I also killed a Buffalo calf which was very fine. I struck the river above the Perogus which had come too in a

---

1 This was above Painted Wood Creek. — En.
bend to the L.S. to shelter from the wind which had become violently hard, I joined Cap' Lewis in the evening & after the winds falling which was late in the evening we proceeded on & encamped on the S.S. The winds of this country which blow with some violence almost every day, has become a serious obstruction in our progression onward, as we can't move when the wind is high with[ou]t great risque, and [if] there was no risque the winds is generally a head and often too violent to proceed.

Course & Distance
25th April
S. 25° E. 21½ miles to a point of timbered land on the Starboard Side.
South 1 mile on the S' point, of wood land & a high Bluff opposite.
S. 78° W. 4 miles to a copse of woods under a hill to the S' Side in a bend.
S. 14° E. 4 1/2 miles to a point of high timber in a larboard bend, passing the entrance of a little bay to S.S.
S. 25° W. 1 1/2 miles to a point of woods on the L' Side.

[Lewis:]

Wednesday April 26th

The wind blew so hard during the whole of this day, that we were unable to move. notwithstanding that we were sheltered by high timber from the effects of the wind, such was it's violence that it caused the waves to rise in such manner as to wet many articles in the small canoes before they could be unloaded. we sent out some hunters who killed 4 deer & 2 Elk, and caught some young wolves of the small kind. Soare eyes is a common complaint among the party. I believe it originates from the immense quantities of sand which is driven by the wind from the sandbars of the river in such clouds that you are unable to discover the opposite bank of the river in many instances. the particles of this sand are so fine and light that they are easily supported by the air, and are carried by the wind for many miles, and at a distance exhibiting every appearance of a column of thick smoke. so penetrating is this sand that we cannot keep any article free from it; in short we are compelled to eat, drink, and breath it very freely. my
pocket watch, is out of order, she will run only a few minutes without stopping. I can discover no radical defect in her works, and must therefore attribute it to the sand, with which, she seems plentifully charged, notwithstanding her cases are double and tight.

[Clark:] 24th of April Wednesday 1805

The wind rose last night and continued blowing from the N. & N W. and sometimes with great violence, until 7 oClock P.M. Several articles wet in the Perogues by their taking water & as the wind was a head we could not move to day. Sent out hunters, they killed 4 Deer 2 Elk & caught some young wolves of the small kind. The party complain much of the Sand in their eyes, The sand is very fine and rises in clouds from the Points and bars of the river, I may say that during those winds we eat Drink & breathe a proportion of sand.

[Lewis:] Thursday April 25th 1805.

The wind was more moderate this morning, tho' still hard; we set out at an early hour.² the water friezed on the oars this morning as the men rowed. About 1o oClock A.M. the wind began to blow so violently that we were obliged to lye too. my dog had been absent during the last night, and I was fearfull we had lost him altogether, however, much to my satisfaction he joined us at 8 oClock this morning. The wind had been so unfavorable to our progress for several days past, and seeing but little prospect of a favourable change; knowing that the river was crooked, from the report of the hunters who were out yesterday, and believing that we were at no very great distance from the Yellow stone River; I determined, in order as much as possible to avoid detention, to proceed by land with a few men to the entrance of that river and make the necessary observations to determine it's position, which I hoped to effect by the time that Capt. Clark could arrive with the party;

¹ I remarked, as a singular circumstance, that there is no dew in this country, and very little rain. Can it be owing to the want of timber? — Gass (p. 114).

[334]
accompanying four men, we proceeded about four miles, when falling in with some buffaloe I killed a yearling calf, which was in good order; we soon cooked and made a hearty meal of a part of it, and renewed our march. Our rout lay along the foot of the river hills. When we had proceeded about four miles, I ascended the hills from whence I had a most pleasing view of the country, particularly of the wide and fertile vallies formed by the Missouri and the Yellowstone rivers, which occasionally unmasked by the wood on their borders disclose their meanderings for many miles in their passage through these delightful tracts of country. I could not discover the junction of the rivers immediately, they being concealed by the wood; however, sensible that it could not be distant I determined to encamp on the bank of the Yellowstone river which made it's appearance about 2 miles South of me. The whole face of the country was covered with herds of Buffaloe, Elk & Antelopes; deer are also abundant, but keep themselves more concealed in the woodland. The buffaloe Elk and Antelope are so gentle that we pass near them while feeding, without appearing to excite any alarm among them; and when we attract their attention, they frequently approach us more nearly to discover what we are, and in some instances pursue us a considerable distance apparently with that view. In our way to the place I had determined to encamp, we met with two large herds of buffaloe, of which we killed three cows and a calf. Two of the former, wer but lean, we therefore took their tongues and a part of their marrow-bones only. I then proceeded to the place of our encampment with two of the men, taking with us the Calf and marrowbones, while the other two remained, with orders to dress the cow that was in tolerable order, and hang the meat out of the reach of the wolves, a precaution indispensible to it's safe keeping, even for a night. We encamped on the bank of the Yellowstone river, 2 miles South of it's confluence with the Missouri. On rejoining Capt. Clark, the 26th in the evening, he informed me, that at 5 P.M. after I left him the wind abated in some measure and he proceeded a few miles further and encamped.

[335]
The courses and distances of this day (25th) being as follow.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Distance</th>
<th>Miles</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. 68° W.</td>
<td></td>
<td>2 3/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West</td>
<td>to a tree in a low plain, in a bend on St.</td>
<td>1 1/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South</td>
<td>to the upper part of a low bluff in a bend on Star's side</td>
<td>1 1/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>East</td>
<td>to a point of timbered land on Star's side.</td>
<td>2 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 28° E.</td>
<td>along the Star's point, opposite a bluff</td>
<td>1 1/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 20° W.</td>
<td>along the Star's point opposite a bluff</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 65° W.</td>
<td>to the upper part of a timbered bottom in a bend on Star's side</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 72° W.</td>
<td>to the lower point of some timber in a bend on Star's side</td>
<td>1 3/4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[Clark:] 25th of April Thursday 1805

The wind was moderate & ahead this morning, we set out at an early hour. The morning cold, some flying clouds to be seen, the wind from the N: ice collected on the ores this morning, the wind increased and became so violent about 1 oClock we were obliged to lay by our canoes having taken in some water, the Dog which was lost yesterday, joined us this morning.

Finding that the winds retarded our progression for many days past, and no appearance of an alteration, and the river being [so] crooked that we could never have 3 miles fair wind, Cap't Lewis concluded to go by land as far as the Rocehjhone or yellow Stone river, which we expect is at no great distance by land and make Some Celestial observations to find the situation of its mouth, and by that measure not detain the Perogues at that place any time for the purpose of making those necessary observations he took 4 men & proceeded on up the Missouri on the L. Side, at 5 oClock the wind luled and we proceeded on and incamped.
SCALP DANCE OF THE MINATARIK
MAN DAN TO YELLOWSTONE

Course Distance & 25th of April

N. 68° W. 2 1/4 miles to point of wood land on the Larboard Side.
West 1 1/4 miles to a tree in a bend to the S' Side in a low plain
South 1 1/2 miles to the upper part of a low bluff in a bend to the S' Side.

East 2 1/4 miles to a point of timbered land on the Starboard Side.
S. 28 E. 1/4 on the S' point. Bluff ops.
S. 20 W. 1 mile on the S' point bluff ops.
N. 65 W 3 miles to the upper part of a timbered bottom in a bend to the S,S".
S. 72 W. 1 3/4 mile to the lower part of some timber in a bend to the S. Side.

[Lewis]:

This morning I dispatched Joseph Fields up the Yellowstone river with orders to examine it as far as he could conveniently and return the same evening; two others were directed to bring in the meat we had killed last evening, while I proceeded down the river with one man in order to take a view of the confluence of this great river with the Missouri, which we found to be two miles distant on a direct line N.W. from our encampment. The bottom land on the lower side of the Yellowstone river near its mouth, for about one mile in width appears to be subject to inundation; while that on the opposite side of the Missouri and the point formed by the junction of these rivers is of the common elivation, say from twelve to 18 feet above the level of the water, and of course not liable to be overflown except in extreme high water, which does not appear to be very frequent. There is more timber in the neighbourhood of the junction of these rivers, and on the Missouri as far below as the White-earth River, than there is on any part of the Missouri above the entrance of the Chyenne river to this place. The timber consists principally of Cottonwood, with some small elm, ash and boxalder. The under growth on the sandbars and verge of the river is the small leaved willow; the low bottoms, rose bushes which rise to three or four feet high, the redbury, servicebury, and the
redwood; the high bottoms are of two discriptions, either timbered or open; the first lies next to the river and it's under brush is the same with that of the low timbered bottoms with the addition of the broad leafed willow, Goosbury, choke cherry, purple currant, and honesuckle bushis; the open bottoms border on the hills, and are covered in many parts by the wild hyssop which rises to the hight of two feet. I observe that the Antelope, Buffaloe Elk and deer feed on this herb; the willow of the sandbars also furnish a favorite winter food to these anamals as well as the grouse, the porcupine, hare, and rabbit. about 12 O[c]lock I heard the discharge of several guns at the junction of the rivers, which announced to me the arrival of the pa[r]ty with Capt Clark; I afterwards learnt that they had fired on some buffaloe which they met with at that place, and of which they killed a cow and several Calves; the latter are now fine veal. I dispatched one of the men to Capt Clark requesting him to send up a canoe to take down the meat we had killed and our baggage to his encampnt, which was accordingly complied with. after I had completed my observations in the evening I walked down and joined the party at their encampment on the point of land formed by the junction of the rivers; found them all in good health, and much pleased at having arrived at this long wished for spot, and in order to add in some measure to the general pleasure which seemed to pervade our little community, we ordered a dram to be issued to each person; this soon produced the fiddle, and they spent the evening with much hilarity, singing & dancing, and seemed as perfectly to forget their past toils, as they appeared regardless of those to come. in the evening, the man I had sent up the river this morning returned, and reported that he had ascended it about eight miles on a straight line; that he found it crooked, meandering from side to side of the valley formed by it; which is from four to five miles wide. the corrent of the river gentle, and it's bed much interrupted and broken by sandbars; at the distance of five miles he passed a large Island well covered with timber, and three miles higher a large creek falls in on the S.E. side above a high bluff in which there are several stratas of coal. the
country bordering on this river as far as he could perceive, like that of the Missouri, consisted of open plains. He saw several of the bighorned animals in the course of his walk; but they were so shy that he could not get a shoot at them; he found a large horn of one of these animals which he brought with him. The bed of the Yellowstone river is entirely composed of sand and mud, not a stone of any kind to be seen in it near its entrance. Capt. Clark measured these rivers just above their confluence; found the bed of the Missouri 520 yards wide, the water occupying 330. It's channel deep. The Yellowstone river including its sandbar, 858 yds. of which, the water occupied 297 yards; the deepest part 12 feet; it was falling at this time & appeared to be nearly at its summer tide. The Indians inform that the Yellowstone river is navigable for perogues and canoes nearly to its source in the Rocky Mountains, and that in its course near these mountains it passes within less than half a day's march of a navigable part of the Missouri. It's extreem sources are adjacent to those of the Missouri, river platte, and I think probably with some of the South branch of the Columbia river. The first part of its course lies through a mountainous rocky country tho' well timbered and in many parts fertile; the middle, and much the most extensive portion of the river lies through a delighfull rich and fertile country, well covered with timber, interspersed with plains and meadows, and well watered; it is some what broken in many parts. The lower portion consists of fertile open plains and meadows almost entirely, tho' it possesses a considerable proportion of timber on it's borders. The current of the upper portion is extremly rappid, that of the middle and lower portions much more gentle than the Missouri. The water of this river is turbid, tho' dose not possess as much sediment as that of the Missouri. This river

---

1 The name Yellowstone is simply the English of the French name Roche Jaune, itself without doubt translated from an earlier Indian appellation. Chittenden thinks that this name originated from the yellow color of the rocks which form the walls of the Grand Cañon of the Yellowstone; see his Yellowstone National Park (Cincinnati, 1865), pp. 3-7. The name Yellowstone appears to have been first recorded (1798) by David Thompson, the British explorer. — Ed.
in its course receives the waters of many large tributary streams principally from the S.E. of which the most considerable are the Tongue and bighorn rivers (Clark’s fork) the former is much the largest, (rather the smallest — next in size Clark’s fork, and the Big horn the largest by much.) and heads with the river Platte and Bighorn river, as dose the latter with the Tongue river and the river Platte. A sufficient quantity of limestone may be readily procured for building near the junction of the Missouri and Yellowstone rivers. I could observe no regular stratas of it, tho’ it lies on the sides of the river hills in large irregular masses, in considerable quantities; it is of a light colour, and appears to be of an excellent quality.

The courses and distances of the 26th as the party ascended the Missouri, are as follow.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Distance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S. 45° E. to a point of woodland on the Star's side</td>
<td>2 1/2 Miles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 40° W. along the Star's point, opposite a bluff</td>
<td>1 1/2 Miles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 45° W. to the commencement of the wood in a bend on Star's side</td>
<td>3 Miles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South. to the point of land formed by the junction of the Missouri and yellow stone rivers</td>
<td>3 Miles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Point of Observation N° 7. April 26th 1805.

On the Lar's bank of the Yellowstone river 2 miles S.E. of it’s junction with the Missouri observed Equal altitudes of the ⊙ with Sextant and artificial horizon.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time</th>
<th>Altitude</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A.M. 9 41 13 — P.M. 6 49 8</td>
<td>Altitude given by Sextant at the time of observation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42 52 — 52 41</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44 31 — 52 17</td>
<td>48 57 45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chronometer too fast mean time [blank space in MS.]

[52°]m. the clouds this morning prevented my observing the moon with a. Aquila; and as the moon was not again observeable until the 1st of May, I determined not to wait, but rather to relinquish for the present the obtaining the necessary data to fix the longitude of this place.

Observed Meridian altitude of ⊙' L. L. with Octant by the back observation

Latitude deduced from this observation. [blank space in MS.]
last night was very cold. the Thermometer stood at 32 abov o this morning. I set out at an early hour, as it was cold I walked on the bank, & in my walk Shot a beaver & 2 Deer, one of the Deer in tolerable order, the low bottom of the river is generally covered with willows & rose bushes, red berry, wild cherry & red or arrow wood interspersed with glades The timber is Cottonwood principally, Elm small ash also furnish a portion of the timber. The clay of the bluffs appear much whiter than below, and contain several Strata's of coal, on the hill sides I observe pebbles of different size & colour. The river has been rising for several days, & raised 3 inches last night, at 12 oClock arrived at the forks of the Roche John & Missouri and formed a camp on the point. Soon after George Drewyer came from Cap' Lewis & informed me that he was a little way up the Roche John and would join me this evening, I sent a canoe up to Cap' Lewis and proceeded [to] measure the width of the [river], and find the depth. The Missouri is 520 yards wide above the point of Yellow Stone and the water covers 350 yards, the Yellow Stone River is 858 yards wide including its sand bar, the water covers 297 yards and the deepest part is 12 feet water, it is at this time falling, the Missouri rising. The Indians inform that the Yellow Stone River is navigable for Perogues to near its source in the Rocky Mountains, it has many tributary streams, principally on the S.E. side, and heads at no great distance from the Missouri, the largest rivers which fall into it is Tongue river which heads with the waters of River Platt, and Bighorn river which also heads with Platt & Tongue R. the current of this river is said to be rapid near its mouth it is very jentle, and its water is of a whitish colour much clearer of Sediment than the Missouri, the Countrey on this river is said to be broken in its whole course & contains a great deal of wood, the Countrey about its mouth is very fine, the bottoms on either side is wooded with Cotton wood, ash, Elm, &; near the banks of the river back is higher bottoms and covered with red berry, Goose berry & rose bushes &. interspersed with

[341]
small open Glades, and near the high land is Generally open rich bottoms. at our arrival at the forks I observed a Drove of Buffalow Cows & Calves on a sand bar in the point, I directed the men to kill the fattest Cox, and 3 or 4 calves, which they did and let the others pass, the cows are poor, calves fine veale.

Course & Distance 26th of April
S. 45° E. 21 1/2 miles to a point of wood land on the Starboard Side
S. 40° W. 11 1/2 miles on the S. p' a bluff opposit
N. 75° W. 3 miles to the commencement of a wood bottom in a bend to the S't Side
South 1 mile to the junction of Rochejhone or yellowstone River & the Mis{s]ouri

Capt Lewis joined me in the evening after taking equal altitudes a little way up the Yellowstone river the countrey in every direction is plains except the moul[ ] bottoms of the river, which are covered with some indifferent timber such as Cotton wood, Elm & small ash, with different kind of S[h]ubs & bushes on the forks about 1 mile from the point at which place the 2 rivers are near each other a butifull low leavel plain commences, and extends up the Missouri & back, this plain is narrow at its commencement and widens as the Missouri bends north, and is bordered by an extensive wood land for many miles up the Yellow Stone river, this low plain is not Subject to over flow, appear to be a few inches above high water mark and affords a butifull commanding situation for a fort near the commencement of the Prairie, about [blank space in MS.] miles from the Point & [blank space in MS.] yards from the Missouri a small lake is Situated, from this lake the plain rises gradually to a high butifull countrey, the low Plain continues for some distance up both rivers on the Yellow Stone it is wide & butifull, ops! the point on the S. Side is some high timbered land, about 1 1/2 miles below on the same side a little distance from the water is an elivated plain. Several of the party was up the Yellow Stone R several miles, & informed that it meandered through a butifull coun-
Joseph Fields discovered a large creek falling into the Yellowstone River on the S E. Side 8 miles up near which he saw a big horned animal, he found in the Prairie the horn of one of those animals which was large and appeared to have laid several years. I saw many buffalo dead on the banks of the river in different places some of them eaten by the white bears & wolves all except the skin & bones, others entire, those animals either drowned in attempting to cross on the ice during the winter or swimming across to bluff banks where they could not get out & too weak to return we saw several in this Situation, enormous numbers of antelopes in the forks of the river, Buffalo & Elk & Deer is also plenty, beaver is in every bend. I observe that the Magpie Goose duck & Eagle all have their nests in the Same neighbourhood, and it is not uncommon for the Magpie to build in a few rods of the eagle, the nests of this bird is built very strong with sticks covered very thickly with one or more places through which they enter or escape, the Goose I make no doubt falls a pray to those vicious eagles.

**[Lewis:]**

**Saturday April 2nd, 1806**

Previous to our setting out this morning I made the following observations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Point of observation N° 8.</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sun's magnetic azimuth by Circumferentor</td>
<td>N. 81° E.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altitude by sextant</td>
<td>44° 56' 30&quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sun's magnetic azimuth by Circumference</td>
<td>N. 82° E.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time by Chronometer A. M.</td>
<td>9. 34. 29.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altitude by Sextant</td>
<td>47° 22. -</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sun's Magnetic azimuth by Circumference</td>
<td>N. 83° E.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time by Chronometer A. M.</td>
<td>9. 42. 17.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altitude by Sextant</td>
<td>49° 50. 30.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[343]
This morning I walked through the point formed by the junction of the rivers; the woodland extends about a mile, when the rivers approach each other within less than half a mile; here a beatfull level low plain commences and extends up both rivers for many miles, widening as the rivers recede from each other, and extending back half a mile to a plain about 12 feet higher than itself; the low plain appears to be a few inches higher than high water mark and of course will not be liable to be overflown; tho' where it joins the high plain a part of the Missouri when at it's greatest hight, passes through a channel of 60 or 70 yards wide and falls into the Yellowstone river. on the Missouri about 21½ miles from the entrance of the Yellowstone river, and between this high and low plain, a small lake is situated about 200 yards wide extending along the edge of the high plain parallel with the Missouri about one mile. on the point of the high plain at the lower extremity of this lake I think would be the most eligible site for an establishment between this low plain and the Yellowstone river their is an extensive body of timbered land extending up the river for many miles. this site recommended is about 400 yards distant from the Missouri and about double that distance from the river yellow stone; from it the high plain, rising very gradually, extends back about three miles to the hills, and continues with the same width between these hills and the timbered land on the Yellowstone river, up that stream, for seven or eight miles; and is one of the handsomest plains I ever beheld. on the Missouri side the hills sircumscribe it's width, & at the distance of three miles up that river from this site, it is not more than 400 yards wide. Capt Clark thinks that the lower extremity of the low plane would be most eligible for this establishment; it is true that it is much nearer both rivers, and might answer very well, but I think it rather too low to venture a permanent establishment, particularly if built of brick or other durable materials, at any considerable expence; for so capricious, and versatile are these rivers, that it is difficult to say how long it will be, untill they direct the force of their currents against this narrow part of the low plain, which when they do, must shortly yeald to their influence; in
such case a few years only would be necessary, for the annihilation of the plain, and with it the fortification. 1 I continued my walk on shore; at 11 A. M. the wind became very hard from N.W. insomuch that the pirogues and canoes were unable either to proceed or pass the river to me; I was under the necessity therefore of shooting a goose and cooking it for my dinner. the wind abated about 4. P.M. and the party proceeded tho’ I could not conveniently join them until night. altho’ game is very abundant and gentle, we only kill as much as is necessary for food. I believe that two good hunters could conveniently supply a regiment with provisions. for several days past we have observed a great number of buffalo lying dead on the shore, some of them entire and others partly devoured by the wolves and bear. those animals either drowned during the winter in attempting to pass the river on the ice during the winter or by swimming across at present to bluff banks which they are unable to ascend, and feeling themselves too weak to return remain and perish for the want of food; in this situation we met with several little parties of them. beaver are very abundant, the party kill several of them every day. The Eagles, Magpies, and gees have their nests in trees adjacent to each other; the magpy particularly appears fond of building near the Eagle, as we scarcely see an Eagle’s nest unaccompanied with two or three Magpies nests within a short distance. The bald Eagle are more abundant here than I ever observed them in any part of the country.

Courses and distances 27th April 1805.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Direction</th>
<th>Distance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. 9° E.</td>
<td>to the upper part of the timber on Lar' in the point, 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the same being the commencement of the low plain, at which the Missouri and Yellowstone rivers are about 250 yards distant. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West.</td>
<td>to the lower part of the timber in the bend on Lar' side</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 A conclusion justified by the notable changes which have occurred during the century past, in the courses of these rivers at their confluence. — Ed.
N. 32. W. to a point of the timbered bottom on Lar\(^6\) opposite to a low bluff, between two points of wooded bottom \(^1\) a mile distant from each other: a beautifull plain back, several high open situations, between the woodlands on the Star\(^3\) side.

West, to a point of small willows on the Star\(^3\) side,\(^1\) opposite a low white bluff bordering a beautifull rising plain; some woodland below this bluff on the Lar\(^6\) side, and a thick wooded bottom on Star\(^3\) side. On this course the river is wide, and crowded with sandbars; a little below the low bluff on the Lar\(^6\) side, a timbered bottom commences; here the country rises gradually from the river on the Lar\(^6\) side.

Miles 3

---

[Clark:] 27\(^{th}\) of April Saturday 1805

After taking the azimuth of the Sun & breakfasting we set out wind moderate & a head; at 11 oClock the wind rose and continued to blow very hard a head from the N. W. until 4 oClock PM, which blew the sand off the Points in such clouds as almost covered us on the opposit bank, at 4 I set out from my unpleasant Situation and proceeded on, Cap\(^1\) Lewis walked on shore in the Point to examine & view the Countrey and could not get to the boats untill night. Saw great numbers of Goats or antilopes, Elk, Swan Gees & Ducks, no buffalo to day I saw several beaver and much sign, I shot one in the head which immediatly sunk, altho the game of different kinds are in abundance we kill nothing but what we can make use of.

Course, distance the 27\(^{th}\) of April

N. 9\(^\circ\) E. 1 mile to the upper part of the wood in the point and commenceent of a beautifull elevated plain at which place the Yellow Stone river is about 250 yards distant from the Mis[ouri] sou\(\text{r}\)i.

\(^1\) At the site of old Fort Union — a post built in 1836 by the American Fur Company; see Chittenden's account of it (Amer. Fur Trade, pp. 959, 960). — Ed.
1 mile to the lower part of the timber in a bend to the
Lar'f Side back of which and on the river below is [4]
high bottom, and the upper plains are not so high as
below and but full as far as can be seen.

N. 32° W 3 miles to a point of the timbered bottom on the Lar'f Side
oppost a low bluff between two points of wooded
bottom 1/2 a mile distant from each a but full plain
back, several high open situations between the wood
land in the S. bend.

West 3 miles to a point of small Willows on the S' Side opposit
a low white bluff bordering a but full rising Plain,
some wood land below this bluff on the L.S. and a
thick wooded bottom on the S' Side in this course
the river is wide and crowded with sand bars, a little
above the low bluff on the L.S. a timbered bottom
commences. here the country runs gradually from
the river on the L.S.

[347]
S

ET out this morning at an early hour; the wind was favourable and we employed our sails to advantage. Capt Clark walked on shore this morning, and I proceeded with the party. The country through which we passed today is open as usual and very broken on both sides near the river hills, the bottoms are level fertile and partially covered with timber. The hills and bluffs exhibit their usual mineral appearances, some burnt hills but no appearance of Pumice-stone; coal is in great abundance and the salts still increase in quantity; the banks of the river and sandbars are incrusted with it in many places and appear perfectly white as if covered with snow or frost. The woods are now green, tho' the plains and meadows appear to abate of the verdure those below exhibited some days past. We past three small runs today, two falling in on the Star side and one on the Lar side, they are but small afford but little water and head a few miles back in the hills. We saw great quantities of game today; consisting of the common and mule deer, Elk, Buffaloe, and Antelopes; also four brown bear, one of which was fired on and wounded by one of the party but we did not get it; the beaver have cut great quantities of timber; saw a tree nearly 3 feet in diameter that had been felled by them. Capt. Clark in the course of his walk killed a deer and a goose; & saw three black bear; he thinks the bottoms are not so wide as they have been for some days past.
Courses and distances 28th of April.

North. to a point of timber on Lar's side.
N. 4. W. to the upper part of the point on Lar' opposite to a
high rugged bluf
S. 50. W. to a high bluff on the Lar's side just above a timbered bottom, and opposite a point of woodland
on Star's side.
S. 85. W. to the center of a bend on Lar's side.
N. 25. W. to a point of timbered land on Lar's passing a point
of star side at 14.1 M.
N. 18. W. to the lower point of the timber in a bend on
Star's side.
S. 4. W. to a point of woodland on Star's side.
S. 15. W. to a high bluff point on Lar's side, the river making
a considerable bend to S.E.
N. 85. W. to a point of woodland on the Lar's side.
N. 45. W. to a high bluff point on the Star's side.
S. 85. W. to a point of woodland on Star's side.

Miles — 24.

[a fine day river falling, wind favourable from the S.E. and moderate, I walked on shore to view the country, from the top of the high hills, I beheld a broken & open country on both Sides, near the river some very handsome low plains, I kill'd a Deer & a goose, saw three black bear great numbers of Elk antelopes & 2 Ganges of Buffalo. The hills & Bluffs show the stratum of coal, and burnt appearances in many places, in and about them I could find no appearance of Pumice Stone, the woods have a green appearance, the Plains do not look so green as below. The bottoms are not so wide this afternoon as below. Saw four bear this evening, one of the men Shot at one of them. The antelopes are nearly red, on that part which is Subject to change i.e. the sides & 2 of the back from the head, the other part as white as Snow, 2 small runs fall in on the S. Side and one this evening on the Lar' Side those runs head at a few miles in the hills and discharge but little water, the Bluffs in this part

[349]
as also below Shew different strataums of coal or carbonated wood, and coloured earths, such as dark brown, yellow a lightish brown, & a dark red &c.

Course & distance the 28th of April

N. 24 1/4 miles to a point of timber on the Laõ Side
N. 43 5/2 W. 1 to the upper part of the point on the L. Side opposit is a high rugged Bluff on the S.S.
S. 56 3/4 W. 2 1/4 To a high bluff on the Lõ Side opposit to a point of woods & just above a wood
S. 85 1/2 W. 1 To the center of a bend on the Laõ Side
N. 25 1/2 W. 3 To a point of timbered land on the Lõ Side passing a point on the Sõ Side at 1 1/4 miles
N. 18 3/2 W. 2 To the lower point of a timber in a bend to the Starboard Side.
S. 47 1/2 W. 4 To a point of wood Land on the Sõ Side
S. 10 5/2 W. 2 To a high bluff point on the L. Side the river making a considerable bend S.E.
N. 85 1/2 W. 2 to a point of wood land on the Larõ Side
N. 45 1/2 W. 1 to a high Bluff põ on the Stõ Side
S. 85 1/2 W. 3 To a point of wood land on the Stõ Side

[Lewis:] Monday April 29th 1805.

Set out this morning at the usual hour; the wind was moderate; I walked on shore with one man. about 8. A.M. we fell in with two brown or yellow [white] bear; both of which we wounded; one of them made his escape, the other after my firing on him pursued me seventy or eighty yards, but fortunately had been so badly wounded that he was unable to pursue so closely as to prevent my charging my gun; we again repeated ourfir[e] and killed him. it was a male not fully grown, we estimated his weight at 300 lb; not having the means of ascertaining it precisely. The legs of this bear are somewhat longer than those of the black, as are its tallons and tusks incomparably larger and longer. the testicles, which in the black bear are placed pretty well back between the thyces and contained in one pouch like those of the dog and most quadrupeds, are in the yellow or brown bear placed much
further forward, and are suspended in separate pouches from two to four inches asunder; its colour is yellowish brown, the eyes small, black, and piercing; the front of the fore legs near the feet is usually black; the fur is finer thicker and deeper than that of the black bear. These are all the particulars in which this animal appeared to me to differ from the black bear; it is a much more furious and formidable animal, and will frequently pursue the hunter when wounded. It is astonishing to see the wounds they will bear before they can be put to death. The Indians may well fear this animal equipped as they generally are with their bows and arrows or indifferent fuzees, but in the hands of skillful riflemen they are by no means as formidable or dangerous as they have been represented. Game is still very abundant we can scarcely cast our eyes in any direction without perceiving deer Elk Buffaloe or Antelopes. The quantity of wolves appear to increase in the same proportion; they generally hunt in parties of six eight or ten; they kill a great number of the Antelopes at this season; the Antelopes are yet meagre and the females are big with young; the wolves take them most generally in attempting to swim the river; in this manner my dog caught one drowned it and brought it on shore; they are but clumsy swimmers, tho' on land when in good order, they are extremly fleet and dureable. We have frequently seen the wolves in pursuit of the Antelope in the plains; they appear to decoy a single one from a flock, and then pursue it, alternately relieving each other till they take it. On joining Capt Clark he informed me that he had seen a female and faun of the bighorned animal; that they ran for some distance with great apparent ease along the side of the river bluff where it was almost per-

1 By "white bear," here and elsewhere in Lewis and Clark's journals, must not be understood the white or polar bear of Arctic regions, but the animal now known as "grizzly bear" (Ursus horribilis), first adequately described by our explorers. It was technically named in 1815. Ed.

2 As no wound except through the head or heart is mortal, they frequently fall a sacrifice if they miss their aim. He rather attacks than avoids a man, and such is the terror which he has inspired, that the Indians who go in quest of him paint themselves and perform all the superstitious rites customary when they make war on a neighboring nation. — Biddle (i, p. 260).

[351]
pendicular; two of the party fired on them while in motion without effect. we took the flesh of the bear on board and proceeded. Capt. Clark walked on shore this evening, killed a deer, and saw several of the bighorned animals. there is more appearance of coal today than we have yet seen, the stratas are 6 feet thick in some instances; the earth has been burnt in many places, and always appears in stratas on the same level with the stratas of coal. we came too this evening in the mouth of a little river, which falls in on the Star's side. this stream is about 50 yards wide from bank to bank; the water occupies about 15 yards. the banks are of earth only, abrupt, tho' not high — the bed, is of mud principally. Capt Clark, who was up this stream about three miles, informed me that it continued about the same width, that it's current was gentle and it appeared navigable for perogues. it meanders through an extensive, fertile, and beautiful vally as far as could be seen about N. 30 W. there was but one solitary tree to be seen on the banks of this river after it left the bottom of the Missouri. the water of this river is clear, with a brownish yellow tint. here the highlands recede from the Missouri, leaving the vally formed by the river from seven to eight miles wide, and rather lower than usual. This stream my friend Capt. C. named Marthas river.1

Courses and distances of the 29th of April.

N. 45° W. to a point of woodland on Lar's side opposite to a high bluff on Star's 3.
West. to a point of woodland Star's opposite to a bluff 2.
N. 80° W. along the Star's point opposite a high sharp bluff 1 1/2.
N. 45° W. to a point of woodland Lar's opposite to a bluff 2.
N. 55° W. to a point of woodland Lar's opposite to a bluff 3.
N. 65° W. to a bluff point on Star's side 1 1/4.
S. 30° W. to the upper point of the high timber on the Lar's side in a bend of the river 3.

1 In the MS. here follows a line afterward crossed out, "in honour of Miss M.," followed by another initial which cannot be deciphered — but in Clark's entry, post, we read, "in honor to the Celebrated M. F." This river is now known as the Big Muddy. — Ed.
WINTER VILLAGE OF THE NEP O BREED
1805] YELLOWSTONE TO MUSSEL SHELL.

S. 85° W. to a point of woodland on Star opposite a bluff.

N. 55° W. to the commencement of a bluff on Star side, passing a sand point at 2 1/2 miles on Lar' side.

S. 75° W. to a point of woodland on Lar' passing the point of a sandbar on Star', the river making a deep bend to the South.

S. 75° W. to the entrance of a river in a bend on Star' where we encamped for the night. This stream we call [blank space in MS.]

[Clark:] 29th April 1805.

Set out this morning at the usual hour, the wind is moderate & from the N.E. had not proceeded far ere we saw a female & her faun of the Bighorn animal on the top of a Bluff lying, the noise we made allarmed them and they came down on the side of the bluff which had but little slope being nearly perpendicular, I directed two men to kill those animals, one went on the top and the other man near the water they had two shots at the doe while in motion without effect. Those animals run & Skipped about with great ease on this declivity & appeared to prefer it to the level bottom or plain. Cap' Lewis & one man walked on shore and he killed a yellow Bear & the man with him wounded one other, after getting the flesh of the bear on bord which was not far from the place where we breakfast, we proceeded on, saw a gangus of buffalow and great numbers of antelopes in every direction also saw elk and several wolves. I walked on shore in the evening & killed a Deer which was so meager as to be unfit for use. The hills contain more coal, and has a greater appearance of being burnt that [than] below, the burnt parts appear on a parallel with the stratums of coal, we came too in the mouth of a Little river on the S.S. which is about 30 or 60 yards from banks to bank, I was up this Stream 3 miles it continues its width and glides with a gentle current, its water is about 15 yards wide at this time, and appears to be navigable for canoes & it meanders through a butifull & extensive vallie as far as can be seen about N 30° W. I saw only a single tree in this fertile
vallie The water of the River is clear of a yellowish colour, we call this river Martheys river in honor to the Celebrated M.F. Here the high land widen from five to Eight miles and much lower than below. Saw several of the big horn animals this evening. The Wolves distroy great numbers of the antilopes by decoying those animals singularly out in the plains and prosueing them alternely, those antelopes are curious and will approach any thing which appears in motion near them &c.

Course & Distance the 29th of April

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Distance</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. 45° W</td>
<td>3 miles</td>
<td>to a point of wood land on the L. Side ope$^1$ to a high Bluff on the Star$^1$ Side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>West</td>
<td>2 miles</td>
<td>to a wood land on the St$^1$ Side ope$^3$ a Bluff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 80° W</td>
<td>1 1/2 miles</td>
<td>on the St$^1$ point, a high Sharp bluff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 45° W</td>
<td>2 miles</td>
<td>to a point of wood land on the L. Side, a high bluff opposit on the S.S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 55° W</td>
<td>3 miles</td>
<td>to a point of timbered land on the Lard Side a Bluff on the S. Side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 65° W</td>
<td>1 1/4 miles</td>
<td>to a Bluff point on the Star$^1$ Side.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 30° W</td>
<td>3 miles</td>
<td>to the upper point of a high timber on the L. Side in a lard bend of the river</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 85° W</td>
<td>1 1/4 miles</td>
<td>to a p$^4$ of timber on Star$^1$ S$^3$ ope$^1$ a bluff</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 55° W</td>
<td>3 1/2 miles</td>
<td>to the commencement of a bluff on S.S. pass$^6$ a sand p$^6$ at 2 1/2 miles on the Lard$^2$ S$^1$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 75° W</td>
<td>1 1/2 miles</td>
<td>to a point of wood land on the passing a sand bar the river making a Deep bend to the South</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 75° W</td>
<td>3 miles</td>
<td>to the entrance of a river on the Star$^1$ Side in a bend, where we encamped for the night.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[Levis:] Tuesdays April 30th, 1805.

Set out at sunrise. the wind blew hard all last night, and continued to blow pretty hard all day, but not so much, as to compell us to ly by. the country as usual is bare of timber; the river bottoms are level and fertile and extensive, but possess but little timber and that of an indifferent quality even of it's kind; principally low cottonwood, either too small for build-
ing, or for plank, or broken and dead at top and unsound in the center of the trunk. I saw great quantities of game as usual. Cap' Clark walked on shore the greater part of the day, the Interpreter, Charbono and his Indian woman attended him, past some old Indian lodges built of drift wood; they appear to be of antient date and not recently inhabited. I walked on shore this evening and killed a buck Elk, in tolerable order; it appeared to me to be the largest I had seen, and was therefore induced to measure it; found it five feet three inches from the point of the hoof, to the top of the sholders; the leg and hoof being placed as nearly as possible in the same position they would have been had the animal been standing.

Courses and distances of 30th April.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course (1)</th>
<th>Distance (2)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S. 15° W. to a point of timbered land on the Star 1 side passing a sand point at 3/4 of a M 1 Lar 1</td>
<td>2 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 22° W. to the upper point of the high timber in the center of a bend Lar 1 side at the commencement of a bluff</td>
<td>1 3/4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 85° W. to a point of timbered land on Star 1 side opposite a bluff</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 75° W. to a point of timber at the upper part of a bluff in a bend on Lar 1 side.</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 40° W. to the point of a sandbar on the Lar 1 side, passing a willow point at two miles and a large sandbar on Star 1</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 40° W. to a point of woodland on Star 1 side opposite a bluff on Lar 1 the river making a considerable bend on Lar 1 side</td>
<td>3 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 70° W. to a point of woodland on the Lar 1 side, passing at the commencement of this course, a large sand island in the Lar 1 bend.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 25° W. to the upper part of the high timber on the Lar 1 side. West to a point of high timber on the Lar 1 side, a large sand island in the bend to the Star 1 side.</td>
<td>2 1/2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 80° W. to a point of high woods on the Lar 1 side opposite to which we encamped on a sandbar Star 1 side</td>
<td>3 3/4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Miles 24

1 At the present town of Brockton, Mont. — En.
The wind blew hard from the N E all last night, we Set out at Sunrise the wind blew hard the greater part of the day and part of the time favourable, we did not lie by to day on account of the wind. I walked on Shore to day our interpreter & his squar followed, in my walk the squar found & brought me a bush something like the currunt, which she said bore a delicious froot and that great quantitis grew on the Rocky Mountains. This shrub was in bloom has a yellow flower with a deep cup, the froot when ripe is yellow and hangs in bunches like cherries. Some of those berries yet remained on the bush. The bottoms above the mouth of the last river is extensive level & fertile and covered with indifferent timber in the points, the upland appear to rise gradually, I saw Great numbers of antelopes, also scattering Buffalo, Elk, Deer, wolves, Gees, ducks & Crows. I Killed 2 Gees which we dined on to day. Cap' Lewis walked on Shore and killed an elk this evening, and we came too & camped on the S.S. the countrey on both sides have a butifull appearance.

Course & Distance the 30th of April

S. 15 W. 2 3/4 to a point of timbered land on the S4 Side passed a sand point at 1 1/4 of a mile L.S. 
S. 22 W. 1 3/4 to the upper point of the high timber on the L4 Side in a bend a Bluff on the Lar1 Side 
S. 85 W. 1 to a point of timbered land on the St4 Side opposit to a bluff on the Lard Side 
S. 75 W. 1/2 to a point of timber at the upper part of a bluff in a bend to the Lar1 Side 
N. 40 W. 5 to a point of a Sand bar on the Lar1 Side passing a Willow point at 2 miles, and a large Sand bar on S.S. 
S. 40 W. 3 1/2 to a point of wood land on St4 Side opposit to a Bluff on the L. Side the [river] makeing a considerable bend L.S 
N. 70 W. 3 to a point of wood land on the Lar1 Side passing at the commencement of this course a large sand Island in the Lar1 bend.
Set out this morning at an early hour, the wind being favourable we used our sails which carried us on at a good pace, until about 12 O'clock when the wind became so high that the small canoes were unable to proceed, one of them which was separated from us just before the wind became so violent, is now lying on the opposite side of the river, being unable to rejoin us in consequence of the waves, which during those gusts ran several feet high. We came too on the Lar' shore in a handsome bottom well stocked with cottonwood timber; here the wind compelled us to spend the balance of the day. We sent out some hunters who killed a buffalo, an Elk, a goat and two beavers. Game is now abundant. The country appears much more pleasant and fertile than that we have passed for several days; the hills are lower, the bottoms wider, and better stocked with timber, which consists principally of cottonwood, not however of large size; the under-growth willow on the verge of the river and sandbars, rose bushes, red willow and the broad leafed willow in the bottom lands; the high country on either side of the river is one vast plain, entirely destitute of timber, but is apparently fertile, consisting of a dark rich mellow looking loam. John Shields sick today with the rheumatism. Shannon killed a bird of the plover kind, weight one pound. It measured from the tip of the toe, to the extremity of the beak, 1 foot 10 inches; from tip to tip of wings when extended 2 feet 5 inches; beak 3 3/5 inches; tale 3 1/2 inches; leg and toe 10 inches. In the eye black, piercing, prominent and moderately large, the legs are flat thin, slightly imbricated and of a pale sky blue colour, being covered with feathers as far as the mustle extends down it, which is about half of it's
length. It has four toes on each foot, three of which, are connected by a web, the fourth is small and placed at the heel about the $\frac{1}{4}$ of an inch up the leg. The nails are black and short, that of the middle toe is extremely singular, consisting of two nails the one laping on or overlaying the other, the upper one somewhat the longest and sharpest. The tale contains eleven feathers of equal length, & of a bluish white colour. The body and underside of the wings, except the large feathers of the $1^{st}$ & $2^{nd}$ joints of the same, are white, as are also the feathers of the upper part of the $4^{th}$ joint of the wing and part of those of the $3^{rd}$ adjacent thereto. The large feathers of the $1^{st}$ or pinion and the $2^{nd}$ joint are black; a part of the larger feathers of the $3^{rd}$ joint on the upper side and all the small feathers which cover the upper part of the wings are black, as are also the tuft of long feathers on each side of the body above the joining of the wing, leaving however a stripe of white between them on the back. The head and neck are shaped much like the grey plover, and are of a light brickdust brown; the beak is black and flat, largest where it joins the head, and from thence becoming thinner and tapering to a very sharp point, the upper chap being $\frac{1}{4}$ of an inch the longest turns down at the point and forms a little hook. The nostrils, which commence near the head are long, narrow, connected and parallel with the beak; the beak is much curved, the curvature being upwards in stead of downwards as is common with most birds; the substance of the beak precisely resembles whalebone at a little distance, and is quite as flexible as that substance. Their note resembles that of the grey plover, tho' is rather louder and more varied, their habits appear also to be the same, with this difference; that it sometimes rests on the water and swims which I do not recollect having seen the plover do. This bird which I shall henceforth stile the Missouri plover, generally feeds about the shallow bars of the river, to collect it's food which consists of [blank space in MS.], it immerses it's beak in the water and throws it's head and beak from side to side at every step it takes.1

---

1 The avocet (Recurvirostra Americana). — Ed.
Courses and distances of this day

N. 88° W. to the upper point of some high timber in a bend on the Star Side
South 28° to the upper point of a timbered bottom Lar Side
S. 26° W. to a bluff on the Lar Side
S. 60° W. to a single tree on a point Lar Side
West 65° W. to a point of woodland Lar Side
S. 65° W. to a point of woodland just beneath the upper point of an elevated plain on Star Side, one mile short of which we encamped on the Lar Side.

[Clark's]

May 9th, Wednesday 1805.

We set out at sun rise under a stiff Breeze from the East, the morning cool & cloudy, one man J. Shields sick with rhumetism. one of the men (Shannon) shot a Gull or pleaver, which is about the size of an Indian hen, with a Sharp pointed bill turning up 4 inches long, the head and neck of a light brown, the breast, the under feathers of the 2nd and 3rd joint of the wings, the Short feathers on the upper part of the 3rd joint of the wings, down the back the rump & tail white. The large feathers of the 1st joints of the wing the upper feathers of the 2nd joints of the wings, on the body on the joints of the wing and the bill is black. the legs long and of a skie blue. The feet webed &. This fowl may be properly stiled the Missouri Pleaver. the wind became verry Hard and we put too on the L. Side, as the wind continued with some degree of violence and the waves too high for the Canoes we were obliged to stay all day.

Course & Distance 10th of May

N. 88° W. 1 1/2 to the upper point of some high timber in a bend to the Star Side
South 2 to the upper part of a timber Lar Side
S. 26° W. 1 1/2 to a Bluff on the Lar Side
S. 60° W. 1 to a single tree on a point on the Lar Side
West 2 to a point [of] wood land Lar Side
S. 65° W. 2 to a wood at the upper part of an elevated plain on the S. Side, one mile short of which we camped [359]
The wind continued violent all night nor did it abate much of it's violence this morning, when at daylight it was attended with snow which continued to fall until about 10 A.M. being about one inch deep, it formed a singular contrast with the vegetation which was considerably advanced. some flowers had put forth in the plains, and the leaves of the cottonwood were as large as a dollar. sent out some hunters who killed 2 deer 3 Elk and several buffaloe; on our way this evening we also shot three beaver along the shore; these animals in consequence of not being hunted are extremely gentle, where they are hunted they never leave their lodges in the day, the flesh of the beaver is esteemed a delicacy among us; I think the tale a most delicious morsel, when boiled it resembles in flavor the fresh tongues and sounds of the codfish, and is usually sufficiently large to afford a plentiful meal for two men. Joseph Fields one of the hunters who was out today found several yards of scarlet cloth which had been suspended on the bough of a tree near an old Indian hunting camp, where it had been left as a sacrifice to the deity by the Indians, probably of the Assinniboin nation, it being a custom with them as well as all the nations inhabiting the waters of the Missouri so far as they are known to us, to offer or sacrifice in this manner to the deity what-ever they may be possessed of which they think most acceptable to him, and very honestly making their own feelings the test of those of the deity offer him the article which they most prize themselves. this being the most usual method of worshipping the great spirit as they term the deity, is practiced on interesting occasions, or to produce the happy eventuation of the important occurrences incident to human nature, such as relief from hunger or mallady, protection from their enemies or the delivering them into their hands, and with such as cultivate, to prevent the river's overflowing and destroying their crops &c. sacrifices of a similar kind are also made to the deceased by their friends and relatives. the arc was very piercing this evening the [water] froze on the oars as they rowed. the wind dying at 5 P.M. we set out.

[360]
Courses and distance 24 May.

S. 70° E. to the upper point of the timber on the Lar' side in a bend, passing a point of timber on the Lar' side at 1/4 of a mile

S. 10° E. to a point of wood land on the Star' side

S. 30° W. to a point of low timber on the Lar' side, a little above which on the Star' side, we encamped, having passed some wider fertile bottoms and beautiful high level plains

every thing which is incomprehensible to the indians they call big medicine, and is the operation of the presents [presence — Ed.] and power of the great spirit. this morning one of the men shot the indian dog that had followed us for several days, he would steal their cooked provision.

[Clark:

May 24 Thursday 1805

The wind blew very hard all the last night, this morning about sunrise began to Snow, (The Thermomt at 28. above 0) and continued until about 10 oClock, at which time it ceased, the wind continued hard until about 2 P.M. the Snow which fell to day was about 1. In deep, a very extraordinary climate, to behold the trees Green & flowers spread on the plain, & Snow an inch deep. we Set out about 3 oClock and proceeded on about five 1/2 miles and encamped on the St Side, the evening very cold, Ice freezing to the Ores. I shot a large beaver & Drewyer three in walking on the bank, the flesh of those animals the party is fond of eating &

Course & Distance 24 May

S. 70° E. 2 miles to the upper point of the timber on the Lar' Side in a bend, passing a point of timber on the L.S. at a quarter of a mile

S. 10° E. 1/2 mile to a point of wood Land on the Starboard Side

S. 30° W. 2 miles to a point of Low timber on the Lar' Side a little above which on the Starboard Side we encamped

2 deer and 3 Elk killed

[361]
The morning being very cold we did not set out as early as usual; ice formed on a kettle of water \( \frac{1}{4} \) of an inch thick. the snow has melted generally in the bottoms, but the hills still remain covered. on the lar\(^1\) side at the distance of 2 miles we passed a curious collection of bushes which had been tied up in the form of a fascine [fascine — Ed.] and standing on end in the open bottom it appeared to be about 30 feet high and ten or twelve feet in diameter, this we supposed to have been placed there by the Indians, as a sacrifice for some purpose. The wind continued to blow hard from the West but not so strong as to compel us to ly by. Capt Clark walked on shore and killed an Elk which he caused to be butch[er]ed by the time I arrived with the party, here we halted and dined being about 12 OC\(^\circ\) our usual time of halting for that purpose. after dinner Capt. Clark pursued his walk, while I continued with the party, it being a rule which we had established, never to be absent at the same time from the party, the plains or high lands are much less elivated than they were, not being more than from 50 to 60 feet above the river bottom, which is also wider than usual being from 5 to 9 M\(^1\) in width; traces of the ancient beds of the river are visible in many places through the whole extent of this valley. since the hills have become lower the appearance of the stratas of coal burnt hills and pumice stone have in a great measure ceased; I saw none today. we saw vast quantities of Buffaloe, Elk, deer principally of the long tale kind, Antelope or goats, beaver, geese, ducks, brant and some swan. near the entrance of the river mentioned in the 10\(^\circ\) course of this day, we saw an unusual number of Porcupines from which we determined to call the river after that anamal, and accordingly denomi-nated it Porcupine river.\(^1\) this stream discharges itself into the Missouri on the Star\(^1\) side 2000 miles above the mouth of the latter, it is a beatiful bold running stream, 40 yards wide at it's entrance; the water is transparent, it being the first of this discription that I have yet seen discharge itself into the Mis-

\(^1\) Now Poplar River; the name Porcupine is in our day applied to a branch of Milk River. — Ed.
souri; before it enters a large sand bar through which it discharges itself into the Missouri it's banks and bottom are formed of a stiff blue and black clay; it appears to be navigable for canoes and perogues at this time and I have no doubt but it might be navigated with boats of a considerable size in high water. it's banks appear to be from 8 to ten feet high and seldom overflow; from the quantity of water furnished by this river, the appearance of the country, the direction it pursues, and the situation of it's entrance, I have but little doubt but it takes it's source not far from the main body of the Suskashawan river, and that it is probably navigable 150 Miles; perhaps not very distant from that river. Should this be the case, it would afford a very favorable communication to the Athebaskay country, from whence the British N.W. Company derive so large a portion of their valuable furs. Capt. Clark who ascended this river several miles and passed it above where it entered the hills informed me on his return that he found the general width of the bed of the river about one hundred yards, where he passed the river the bed was 112 yards wide, the water was knee deep and 38 yard in width; the river which he could observe from the rising grounds for about 20 miles, bore a little to the East of North, there was a considerable portion of timber in the bottom lands of this river. Capt Clark also met with limestone on the surface of the earth in the course of his walk he also saw a range of low mountains at a distance to the W of N, their direction being N.W. the country in the neighborhood of this river, and as far as the eye can reach, is level, fertile, open and beatifull beyond description. 14 of a mile above the entrance of this river a large creek falls in which we called 2000 Mile Creek. I sent Rubin Fields to examine it, he reported it to be a bold running stream, its bed 30 yards wide. we proceeded about 3 miles above this creek and encamped on the Star's shore. I walked out a little distance and met with 2 porcupines which were feeding on the young willow which grow in great abundance on all the sandbars; this animal is exceedingly clumsy and not very watchfull I approached so near one of them before it perceived me that I touched it with
my espontoon. found the nest of a wild goose among some driftwood in the river from which we took three eggs. this is the only nest we have met with on driftwood, the usual position is the top of a broken tree, sometimes in the forks of a large tree but almost invariably, from 15 to 20 feet or upwards high.

Courses and distances May 3d 1805.

N. 50° W. to a point of high timber in a bend Star! side 3 ¼
S. 05° W. to a point of high timber in the center of a bend on Lar! side 2 ¼
N. 42° W. to a point of woodland Star! side 1.
N. 55° W. to some dead timber in a Star! bend 2 ¼
South to the upper part of the high timber in a bend on the Lar! side. 3
S. 85° W. to a point of woodland Star! side 1 ½
S. 85° W. to the commencement of the timber on the Lar! side in a bend 1 ¼
North to the upper part of the high timber in a bend on the Star!, passing a sand point at ½ mile on Lar! side 1 ½
S. 05° W. to a point of woodland on the Lar! side. ½
S. 75° W. to a point of woodland on the Star! side, at the entrance of a large river on the Star! side, called Porcupine R. 1 ¾
S. 45° W. to the high timber on the lar! side, passing the entrance of 2000 mile Creek at ¼ of a mile on Lar! side. 3.
N. 40° W. to some high timber on the Star! side, just above an old channel of the river on the Star! where we encamp! ½

Miles 18 ½

[Clark:]"
brace in each, which had been left as a sacrifice near one of their
swet houses, on the L.S. we passed to day a curious collection
of bushes tied up in the shape of fawcet about 10 feet diameter,
which must have been left also by the natives as an offering to
their medison which they [are] convinced protected or gave
them relief near the place, the wind continued to blow hard
from the West, altho not sufficiently so to detain us. I walked
on shore and killed an Elk & had him buechered by the time
the Perogus came up which was the usual time of dining.
The high lands are low and from 5 to 9 miles apart and there
is evident marks of the head [bed] of the river having been
changed frequently but little appearance of the coal & burnt
hills to day. Great numbers of Buffalow, Elk, Deer, antilope,
beaver, Porcupins, & water tows seen to day, such as, Geese,
ducks of dif. kinds, & a few Swan. I continued my walk on
shore after dinner, and arrived at the mouth of a river on the
S Side, which appeared to be large, and I concluded to go up
this river a few miles to examine it accordingly I set out
North 1 mile thro' wood or timbered bottom, 2 miles through
a butifull leavel plain, and 1 mile over a high plain about 50
feet higher than the bottom, & came to the little river, which
I found to be a butifull clear Stream of about 100 vds from
bank to bank, (I waded this river at the narrowest part and
made it 112 steps from bank to bank and at this place which
was a kind of fording place the water was near Knee deep,
and 38 steps wide, the bottom of a hard stiff Black clay. &
observed a Great perportion of timber in the bottoms of this
river as far as I could See which was to the East of N, 18 or
20 miles, it appears to be navagable at this time for canoes,
and from appearances must be navagable a long distance for
Perogus & boats in high water. This river we call Porcupes
from the great number of those animas found about it's
mouth. a Short distance above about 1/4 mile and on the
Ear1 Side a large Creek falls in, which R. Fields went to
examine & reports that it is a bold running stream 30 vds
wide as this creek is 2000 miles up the Missouri we call it
the 2000 mile Creek, we proceeded on 3 miles & camped on
the S.S. here I joined Cap' Lewis who had in my absence
1365
walk on the upper Side of Porcupine River for some distance. This river from its size & quantity of water must head at no great distance from the Saskashawan on this river I saw emience herds [of] Elk & Buffalow & many deer & Porcupine. I also saw the top of a mountain which did not appear very high to the West of N. & bore N W. I saw on the high land limestone & pebble. The country about the mouth of this river and as far as the eye can reach is butiful open country. The greater part of the snow is melted.

Course & Distance 3 1/2 of May 1805

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Distance</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. 50° W</td>
<td>1/4 mile</td>
<td>to a point of high timber on the St Side in a bend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 65° W</td>
<td>2 1/4</td>
<td>to a point of high timber on the L Side about the middle of a bend L S.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 40° W</td>
<td>1 mile</td>
<td>to a point of wood land St Side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 55° W</td>
<td>2 1/2 miles</td>
<td>to some dead timber in St bend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>to the upper part of a timber in a bend to the Lar Side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 85° W</td>
<td>1/4 mile</td>
<td>to a p't of wood land St Side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 85° W</td>
<td>1/4</td>
<td>to the commencement of a timber on the Lar Side in a bend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>North</td>
<td>1 1/2</td>
<td>to the upper part of the high timber in a bend on the Star Side passing a Sand point at 1/2 a mile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 65° W</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>to a point of wood Land on the L Side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S 75° W</td>
<td>1 1/4</td>
<td>to a point of wood land on the St Side at the mouth of a large river on the St Side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S 45° W</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>to a high timber on the Lar Side passed the mouth of 2000 mile Creek at 1/2 of a mile on the Lard Side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. 40° W</td>
<td>1/2</td>
<td>to some high timber on the S Side just above an old channel of the river St Side. encamped</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[Lewis]

Saturday May 4th 1805.

We were detained this morning untill about 9 OC in order to repare the rudder irons of the red perogue which were broken last evening in landing; we then set out, the wind hard against us. I walked on shore this morning, the weather was more plesant, the snow has disappeared; the frost seems to have effected the vegetation much less than could have been
expected the leaves of the cottonwood the grass the box alder willow and the yellow flowering pea seem to be scarcely touched; the rosebushes and honeysuckle seem to have sustained the most considerable injury. The country on both sides of the Missouri continues to be open level fertile and beautiful as far as the eye can reach which from some of the eminences is not short of 30 Miles. The river bottoms are very extensive and contain a much greater proportion of timber than usual; the fore part of this day the river was bordered with timber on both sides, a circumstance which is extremely rare and the first which has occurred of any thing like the same extent since we left the Mandans. in the after part of the day we passed an extensive beautiful plain on the Star side which gradually ascended from the river. I saw immense quantities of buffaloe in every direction, also some Elk deer and goats; having an abundance of meat on hand I passed them without firing on them; they are extremely gentle the bull buffaloe particularly will scarcely give way to you. I passed several in the open plain within fifty paces, they viewed me for a moment as something novel and then very unconcernedly continued to feed. Cap't Clark walked on shore this evening and did not rejoin us untill after dark, he struck the river several miles above our camp and came down to us. we saw many beaver some of which the party shot, we also killed two deer today; much sign of the brown bear passed several old Indian hunting camps in the course of the day one of them contained two large lodges which were fortified with old driftwood and fallen timber; this fortification consisted of a circular fence of timber lade horizontally laping on and over laving each other to the height of 5 feet; these pounds are sometimes built from 20 to 30 feet in diameter and covered over with the trunks and limbs of old timber. the usual construction of the lodges we have lately passed is as follows. three or more strong sticks the thickness of a man's leg or arm and about 12 feet long are attached together at one end by a with of small willows, these are then set on end and spread at the base, forming a circle of ten twelve or 14 feet in diameter; sticks of driftwood and fallen timber of convenient size are now placed with one end
on the ground and the other resting against those which are
secured together at top by the with and which support and
give the form to the whole, thus the sticks are laid on untill
they make it as thick as they design, usually about three
ranges, each piece breaking or filling up the interstice of the
two beneath it, the whole forming a conic figure about 10 feet
high with a small apperture in one side which answers as a
door, leaves bark and straw are sometimes thrown over the
work to make it more complete, but at best it affords a very
imperfect shelter particularly without straw which is the state
in which we have most usually found them.

Courses and distances of the 4th of May
S. 85° W. to a point of timber on the Star\(^1\) side 3.
S. 72° W. to a point of woodland on the Star\(^1\) side river wide
and filled with sandbars 5.
S. 50° W. to the mouth of a small creek in a deep bend on Lar\(^1\)
side, a sand Island opposite 1 1/2
N. 10° W. to a point of woodland on the Lar\(^1\) side passing a
Star\(^2\) point at 1 1/2 miles 3.
S. 45° W. to a willow point on the Star\(^1\) side, the river making
a considerable bend to the N. an open plain on
the Star\(^4\) 4.
S. 70° W. to a point of timbered land on the Star\(^1\) where we
encamped. 1 1/2
Miles 18.

At noon the sun was so much obscured that I could not
obtain his maridion Altitude which I much wished in order to
fix the latitude of the entrance of Porcupine river. Joseph
Fields was very sick today with the disentary had a high fever
I gave him a doze of Glauber salts, which operated very well,
in the evening his fever abated and I gave him 30 drops of
laudnum.

[Clark:]  
May 4th Saturday 1805

The rudder Irons of our large Perogee broke off last night,
the replacing of which detained us this morning untill 9
oClock at which time we set out the wind a head from the
west, The countrey on each side of the Missouri is a rich high and butifull the bottoms are extensive with a great deal of water on them. all the fore part of this day the water land bordered the river on both Sides, in the after part a butifull ascending plain on the St Side, we camped on the St Side a little above. we passed a Small Creek on the L Side near which I saw where an Indian lodge had been fortified many year past. Saw great numbers of animals of different kinds on the banks, I saw the black martins to day. in the evening I walked on Shore on the S Side & Struck the river. Several miles above our camp & did not get to Camp untill some time after night. we have one man Sick. The river has been fall-ing for several days passed; it now begins to rise a little, the rate of rise & fall is from one to 3 inches in 24 hours

Course & Distance the 4th of May

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Miles</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>S. 80° W. 3</td>
<td>to a point of timber on the Star Side.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 72° W. 5</td>
<td>to a point of wood land on the St Side. river wide &amp; many sand bars</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 50° W 11/2</td>
<td>to the mouth of a creek in a Deep bend to the Lard. Side. a sand 1s 1/2 op 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N 10° W. 3</td>
<td>to a point of wood land on the Lard Side passing a point S Side 11/4 miles.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S 45° W. 4</td>
<td>to a willow point on the Star Side, the river making a considerable [bend] around to the North an open plain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S. 70° W. 11/2</td>
<td>to a point of timbered land on the Star Side, where we encamped</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

miles 18

[Lewis:

Sunday May 3 1805

A fine morning I walked on shore untill after 8 A.M. when we halted for breakfast and in the course of my walk killed a deer which I carried about a mile and a half to the river, it was in good order. soon after setting out the rudder irons of the white perogue were broken by her running fowl on a sawyer, she was however refitted in a few minutes with some tugs of raw hide and nales. as usual saw a great quantity of [369]
game today; Buffaloe Elk and goats or Antelopes feeding in
every direction; we kill whatever we wish, the buffaloe fur-
nish us with fine veal and fat beef, we also have venison and
beaver tales when we wish them; the flesh of the Elk and
goat are less esteemed, and certainly are inferior. we have not
been able to take any fish for some time past. The country is
as yesterday beatifull in the extreme, saw the carcases of
many Buffaloe lying dead along the shore partially devoured
by the wolves and bear. saw a great number of white brant
also the common brown brant, geese of the common kind
and a small species of geese which differ considerably from
the common canadian goose;¹ their neck head and beak are
considerably thicker shorter and larger than the other in pro-
portion to it's size, they are also more than a third smaller,
and their note more like that of the brant or a young goose
which has not perfectly acquired his notes, in all other
respect they are the same in colour habits and the number
of feathers in the tale, they frequently also associate with the
large geese when in flocks, but never saw them pared off with
the large or common goose. The white brant associate in
very large flocks, they do not appear to be mated or pared
off as if they intended to raise their young in this quarter, I
therefore doubt whether they reside here during the summer
for that purpose. this bird is about the size of the common
brown brant or two thirds of the common goose, it is not so
long by six inches from point to point of the wings when
extended as the other; the beak head and neck are also larger
and stronger; their beak legs and feet are of a redish or flesh-
coloured white, the eye is of moderate size, the pulp of a
deep sea green incircled with a ring of yellowish brown. it
has sixteen feathers of equal length in the tale; their note
differs but little from the common brant, their flesh much the
same, and in my opinion preferable to the goose, the flesh is
dark. they are entirely of a beatifull pure white except the

¹ Of these birds, the small goose described is scientifically known as Bernida
hutchinsii; the Canadian goose is B. canadensis. The brown brant is B. brentia, and
the white brant Chen hyperborea; the last-named bird goes much farther north to
breed. — Ed.
large feathers of the 1st and second joints of the wings which are jet [jet] black. Form and habits are the same with the other brants; they sometimes associate and form one common flock. Capt Clark found a den of young wolves in the course of his walk today and also saw a great number of these animals; they are very abundant in this quarter, and are of two species—the small woolf or burrowing dog of the praries are the inhabitants almost invariably of the open plains; they usually associate in bands of ten or twelve sometimes more and burrow near some pass or place much frequented by game; not being able alone to take a deer or goat they are rarely ever found alone but hunt in bands; they frequently watch and seize their prey near their burrows; in these burrows they raise their young and to them they also resort when pursued; when a person approaches them they frequently bark, their note being precisely that of the small dog. They are of an intermediate size between that of the fox and dog, very active fleet and delicately formed; the ears large erect and pointed the head long and pointed more like that of the fox; tale long and bushey; the hair and fur also resembles the fox tho' is much coarser and inferior. They are of a pale redish brown colour. The eye of a deep sea green colour small and piercing, their tallons are rather longer than those of the ordinary wolf or that common to the atlantic States, none of which are to be found in this quarter, nor I believe above the river Plat.1 The large woolf found here is not as large as those of the atlantic states. They are lower and thicker made shorter leged. Their colour which is not effected by the seasons, is a grey or blackish brown and every intermediate shade from that to a cren [cream] coloured white; these wolves resort [to] the woodlands and are also found in the plains, but never take refuge in the ground or burrow so far as I have been able to inform myself. We scarcely see a gang of buffaloe without observing a parsel of those faithfull shepherds

1 A description of the coyote (Canis latrans), followed by that of the common wolf (C. lupis occidentalis). Cooke thinks that Lewis is mistaken as to the habitat of the latter: "in some of its varieties, it was found in most parts of North America, though it is now exterminated from settled regions." (L. and C., i, p. 247). — Ed.
on their skirts in readiness to take care of the named wounded. the large wolf never barks, but howls as those of the atlantic states do. Cap' Clark and Drewyer killed the largest brown bear this evening which we have yet seen. it was a most tremendous looking anamal, and extremely hard to kill notwithstanding he had five balls through his lungs and five others in various parts he swam more than half the distance across the river to a sandbar, & it was at least twenty minutes before he died; he did not attempt to attack, but fled and made the most tremendous roaring from the moment he was shot. We had no means of weighing this monster; Capt. Clark thought he would weigh 500 lb for my own part I think the estimate too small by 100 lb he measured 8 Feet 7½. Inches from the nose to the extremety of the hind feet, 5 F. 10½ In' arround the breast, 1 F. 11. L. arround the middle of the arm, & 3.F. 11.1. arround the neck; his tallons which were five in number on each foot were 4½, Inches in length. he was in good order, we therefore divided him among the party and made them boil the oil and put it in a cask for future use; the oil is as hard as hogs lard when cool, much more so than that of the black bear. this bear differs from the common black bear in several respects; it's tallons are much longer and more blont, it's tale shorter, it's hair which is of a redish or bey brown, is longer thicker and finer than that of the black bear; his liver lungs and heart are much larger even in proportion with his size; the heart particularly was as large as that of a large Ox. his maw was also ten times the size of black bear, and was filled with flesh and fish. his testicles were pendant from the belly and placed four inches assunder in seporate bags or pouches. this animal also feeds on roots and almost every species of wild fruit.

The party killed two Elk and a Buffaloe today, and my dog caught a goat, which he overtook by superior fleetness, the goat it must be understood was with young and extremely poor. a great number of these goats are devowered by the wolves and bear at this season when they are poor and passing the river from S.W. to N.E. they are very inactive and easily taken in the water, a man can out swim them with great
case; the Indians take them in great numbers in the river at this season and in autumn when they repass to the S.W.

Courses and distances of May 5th, 18.5.

S. 70° W. to the willows on the lower point of an Island near the Star's shore, opposite a low bluff 3
S. 72° W. to some high timber on a projecting point on the Star's side opposite a po'l Lar; passing the upper part of Isl at 2 miles 21.2
S. 30° W. to a point of woodland on the Star's side opposite a low bluff on Lar's side 21.2
N. 48° W. to a point of woodland on the Lar's side 21.4
N. 45° W. to the extremity of the sand bar from the Lar's point 14
South to a willow point on the Star's side short of which we encamped on Star 5

Miles 5

Point of observation N. 4.

On the Lar's shore near the fourth course of this day, observed meridian Altitude of the C. L. L. with Octant by the back observation to be 68 47.4; the latitude deduced from which is 45 40'. 57.6. I do think this observation can be depended on as it was rather late before I could commence it, the sun was about to decline or perhaps had declined a few minutes.

[Clark]

We set out very early and had not proceeded far before the rudder Irons of one of the Perogus broke which detained us a short time. Cap' Lewis walked on shore this morning and killed a Deer, after breakfast I walked on shore Saw great numbers of Buffalow & Elk. Saw also a Den of young wolves, and a number of Grown Wolves in every direction, the white & Grey Brant is in this part of the Missouri I shot at the white brant but at so great a distance I did not kill, The Countryside on both sides is as yesterday handsome & fertile. The river rising & current Strong & in the evening we saw a Brown or Grisley bear on a sand beech, I went out with one man Geo Drewyer & Killed the bear, which was very large and a turrible looking animal, which we found very hard to

1373]
kill we Shot ten Balls into him before we killed him, & 5 of those Balls through his lights. This animal is the largest of the carnivorous kind I ever saw; we had nothing that could way him, I think his weight may be stated at 500 pounds, he measured 8 feet 7½ In' from his nose to the extremity of the Toe, 5 feet 10½ In' around the breast, 1 feet 11 Ins: around the middle of the arm, 3 feet 11 In' around the neck, his tallents was 4 Inches & 3¾ long, he was [in] good order, and appeared very different from the common black bear in as much as his tallents (talon or nail) were blunt, his tail short, his liver & lights much larger, his maw ten times as large and contained meat or flesh & fish only. we had him skinned and divided, the oil tried up & put in Kegs for use. we camped on the Sta'd Side, our men killed three Elk and a Buffalo to day, and our Dog caught an antelope a fair race, this animal appeared very pore & with young.

Course & Distance 5th of May

S. 79° W. 3 miles to the willows on the lower point of an Island near the Sta'd Side opposite a low bluff.

S. 72° W. 2½ miles to some high timber on a projecting point on the Sta'd Side opposite a point L.S., passed the 1st at 2 miles.

S. 30° W. 2½ miles to a point of wood land on the Sta'd Side opposite a low Bluff L. Side.

N. 48° W. 2½ miles to a point of wood land on the Lar'd Side.

N. 45° W. 1¾ miles to the extremity of the sand bar from the Lar'd Side.

South 5 miles to a willow point on the Lar'd Side, short of which we encamped.

17 miles

END OF VOL. 1
TOMBS OF ASSINIBOIN INDIANS IN TREES